

REVISION RECORD FOR THE STATE OF CALIFORNIA

ERRATA

September 1, 2017

2016 Title 24, Part 2, Vol. 1, California Building Code

General Information:

1. The date of these errata is for identification purposes only. See the History Note Appendix at the end of the code.
2. These errata are issued by the California Building Standards Commission in order to correct nonsubstantive printing errors or omissions in California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2, Vol. 1, of the 2016 *California Building Code*. Instructions are provided below.
3. Health and Safety Code Section 18938.5 establishes that only building standards in effect at the time of the application for a building permit may be applied to the project plans and construction. This rule applies to both adoptions of building standards for Title 24 by the California Building Standards Commission and local adoptions and ordinances imposing building standards. An erratum to Title 24 is a nonregulatory correction because of a printing error or omission that does not differ substantively from the official adoption by the California Building Standards Commission. Accordingly, the corrected code text provided by this erratum may be applied on and after the stated effective date.
4. You may wish to retain the superseded material with this revision record so that the prior wording of any section can be easily ascertained.

Remove Existing Pages

47 and 48
53 and 54
63 through 68
75 and 76
81 through 84
87 through 90
99 and 100
103 and 104
115 through 118
125 through 128
155 and 156
179 through 186
189 and 190
193 through 196
203 and 204
235 and 236
297 and 298
309 and 310
325 through 328
331 through 334
337 and 338
367 and 368

Insert Buff Colored Pages

47 and 48
53 and 54
63 through 68
75 and 76
81 through 84
87 through 90
99 and 100
103 and 104
115 through 118
125 through 128
155 and 156
179 through 186
189 and 190
193 through 196
203 and 204
235 and 236
297 and 298
309 and 310
325 through 328
331 through 334
337 and 338
367 and 368

375 and 376
385 and 386
389 and 390
405 through 408
633 and 634
725 and 726
735 and 736
753 and 754
797 and 798

375 and 376
385 and 386
389 and 390
405 through 408
633 and 634
725 and 726
735 and 736
753 and 754
797 and 798

electrical systems are not alterations unless they affect the usability of the building or facility.

ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICE. A device that has a series of steps between 50 and 70 degrees (0.87 and 1.22 rad) from horizontal, usually attached to a center support rail in an alternating manner so that the user does not have both feet on the same level at the same time.

ALTERNATIVE SYSTEM. [OSHPD 1 & 4] Alternative materials, design and methods of construction in accordance with Section 104.11, Section 11.1.4 of ASCE 7 or structural design criteria as approved by the enforcement agency.

AMBULATORY CARE FACILITY. Buildings or portions thereof used to provide medical, surgical, psychiatric, nursing or similar care on a less than 24-hour basis to persons who are rendered incapable of self-preservation by the services provided.

AMUSEMENT ATTRACTION. [DSA-AC] Any facility, or portion of a facility, located within an amusement park or theme park which provides amusement without the use of an amusement device. Amusement attractions include, but are not limited to, fun houses, barrels and other attractions without seats.

AMUSEMENT RIDE. [DSA-AC] A system that moves persons through a fixed course within a defined area for the purpose of amusement.

AMUSEMENT RIDE SEAT. [DSA-AC] A seat that is built-in or mechanically fastened to an amusement ride intended to be occupied by one or more passengers.

ANCHOR BUILDING. An exterior perimeter building of a group other than H having direct access to a covered or open mall building but having required means of egress independent of the mall.

[BS] ANCHORED MASONRY VENEER. Veneer secured with approved mechanical fasteners to an approved backing

ANNULAR SPACE. The opening around the penetrating item.

[F] ANNUNCIATOR. A unit containing one or more indicator lamps, alphanumeric displays or other equivalent means in which each indication provides status information about a circuit, condition or location.

ANSI. [DSA-AC] The American National Standards Institute.

[A] APPROVED. Acceptable to the building official.

[HCD 1, HCD 2 & DSA-AC] “Approved” means meeting the approval of the enforcing agency, except as otherwise provided by law, when used in connection with any system, material, type of construction, fixture or appliance as the result of investigations and tests conducted by the agency, or by reason of accepted principles or tests by national authorities or technical, health or scientific organizations or agencies.

Notes: [HCD 1 & HCD 2]

1. See Health and Safety Code Section 17920 for “Approved” as applied to residential construction and buildings or structures accessory thereto, as referenced in Section 1.8.2.1.1.

2. See Health and Safety Code Section 17921.1 for “Approved” as applied to the use of hotplates in residential construction referenced in Section 1.8.2.1.1.

3. See Health and Safety Code Section 19966 for “Approved” as applied to factory-built housing as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.5.

4. See Health and Safety Code Section 18201 for “Approved” as applied to mobilehome parks as referenced in Section 1.8.2.1.3.

5. See Health and Safety Code Section 18862.1 for “Approved” as applied to special occupancy parks as referenced in Section 1.8.2.1.3.

[A] APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, where such agency has been approved by the building official.

[HCD 1 & HCD 2] “Approved agency” shall mean “Listing agency” and “Testing agency.”

[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] This term is synonymous with “laboratory of record” as referenced in Section 4-335 of the California Administrative Code.

[BS] APPROVED FABRICATOR. An established and qualified person, firm or corporation approved by the building official pursuant to Chapter 17 of this code.

APPROVED LISTING AGENCY. [HCD 1 & HCD 2] Any agency approved by the enforcing agency, unless otherwise provided by law, which is in the business of listing and labeling and which makes available at least an annual published report of such listings in which specific information is included that the product has been tested to recognized standards and found to comply.

[A] APPROVED SOURCE. An independent person, firm or corporation, approved by the building official, who is competent and experienced in the application of engineering principles to materials, methods or systems analyses.

APPROVED TESTING AGENCY. [HCD 1, HCD 2 & DSA-AC] Any agency, which is determined by the enforcing agency, except as otherwise provided by law, to have adequate personnel and expertise to carry out the testing of systems, materials, types of construction, fixtures or appliances.

[BS] AREA (for masonry).

Gross cross-sectional. The area delineated by the out-to-out specified dimensions of masonry in the plane under consideration.

Net cross-sectional. The area of masonry units, grout and mortar crossed by the plane under consideration based on out-to-out specified dimensions.

AREA, BUILDING. The area included within surrounding exterior walls (or exterior walls and fire walls) exclusive of vent shafts and courts. Areas of the building not provided with surrounding walls shall be included in the building area if such areas are included within the horizontal projection of the roof or floor above.

AREA OF REFUGE. An area where persons unable to use stairways can remain temporarily to await instructions or assistance during emergency evacuation.

DEFINITIONS

AREA OF SPORT ACTIVITY. That portion of an indoor or outdoor space where the play or practice of a sport occurs.

AREAWAY. A subsurface space adjacent to a building open at the top or protected at the top by a grating or guard.

ASSEMBLY AREA. [DSA-AC] *A building or facility, or portion thereof, used for the purpose of entertainment, educational or civic gatherings, or similar purposes. For the purposes of these requirements, assembly areas include, but are not limited to, classrooms, lecture halls, courtrooms, public meeting rooms, public hearing rooms, legislative chambers, motion picture houses, auditoria, theaters, playhouses, dinner theaters, concert halls, centers for the performing arts, amphitheaters, arenas, stadiums, grandstands or convention centers.*

ASSEMBLY SEATING, MULTILEVEL. See “Multilevel assembly seating.”

ASSISTIVE DEVICE. [HCD 1-AC] *An aid, tool or instrument used by persons with disabilities to assist in activities of daily living.*

ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEM (ALS). [DSA-AC] *An amplification system utilizing transmitters, receivers and coupling devices to bypass the acoustical space between a sound source and a listener by means of induction loop, radio frequency, infrared or direct-wired equipment.*

ATRIUM. An opening connecting two or more stories other than enclosed stairways, elevators, hoistways, escalators, plumbing, electrical, air-conditioning or other equipment, which is closed at the top and not defined as a mall. Stories, as used in this definition, do not include balconies within assembly groups or mezzanines that comply with Section 505.

ATTIC. The space between the ceiling beams of the top story and the roof rafters.

[F] AUDIBLE ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE. A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of hearing.

AUTOCLAVED AERATED CONCRETE (AAC). Low density cementitious product of calcium silicate hydrates, whose material specifications are defined in ASTM C1386.

[F] AUTOMATIC. As applied to fire protection devices, a device or system providing an emergency function without the necessity for human intervention and activated as a result of a predetermined temperature rise, rate of temperature rise or combustion products.

AUTOMATIC DOOR. *A door equipped with a power-operated mechanism and controls that open and close the door automatically upon receipt of a momentary actuating signal. The switch that begins the automatic cycle may be a photoelectric device, floor mat or manual switch.*

[F] AUTOMATIC FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM. An approved system of devices and equipment which automatically detects a fire and discharges an approved fire-extinguishing agent onto or in the area of a fire.

[F] AUTOMATIC SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEM. A fire alarm system that has initiation devices that utilize smoke detectors for protection of an area such as a room or space with detectors to provide early warning of fire.

[F] AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM. An automatic sprinkler system, for fire protection purposes, is an integrated

system of underground and overhead piping designed in accordance with fire protection engineering standards. The system includes a suitable water supply. The portion of the system above the ground is a network of specially sized or hydraulically designed piping installed in a structure or area, generally overhead, and to which automatic sprinklers are connected in a systematic pattern. The system is usually activated by heat from a fire and discharges water over the fire area.

AUTOMATIC TELLER MACHINE (ATM). [DSA-AC] *Any electronic information processing device that accepts or dispenses cash in connection with a credit, deposit or convenience account. The term does not include devices used solely to facilitate check guarantees or check authorizations, or which are used in connection with the acceptance or dispensing of cash on a person-to-person basis, such as by a store cashier.*

[F] AUTOMATIC WATER MIST SYSTEM. *A system consisting of a water supply, a pressure source, and a distribution piping system with attached nozzles, which, at or above a minimum operating pressure, defined by its listing, discharges water in fine droplets meeting the requirements of NFPA 750 for the purpose of the control, suppression or extinguishment of a fire. Such systems include wet-pipe, dry-pipe and pre-action types. The systems are designed as engineered, pre-engineered, local-application or total flooding systems.*

AUXILIARY AREA. *A public dressing, locker, shower or toilet area or building space intended to be used by bathers.*

[F] AVERAGE AMBIENT SOUND LEVEL. The root mean square, A-weighted sound pressure level measured over a 24-hour period, or the time any person is present, whichever time period is less.

AWNING. An architectural projection that provides weather protection, identity or decoration and is partially or wholly supported by the building to which it is attached. An awning is comprised of a lightweight frame structure over which a covering is attached.

BACKING. The wall or surface to which the veneer is secured.

BACKWASH. *Is the process of thoroughly cleansing the filter media and/or elements and the contents of the filter vessel.*

BALANCED DOOR. A door equipped with double-pivoted hardware so designed as to cause a semicounterbalanced swing action when opening.

[F] BALED COTTON. A natural seed fiber wrapped in and secured with industry accepted materials, usually consisting of burlap, woven polypropylene, polyethylene or cotton or sheet polyethylene, and secured with steel, synthetic or wire bands or wire; also includes linters (lint removed from the cottonseed) and motes (residual materials from the ginning process).

[F] BALED COTTON, DENSELY PACKED. Cotton made into banded bales with a packing density of not less than 22 pounds per cubic foot (360 kg/m³), and dimensions complying with the following: a length of 55 inches (1397 mm), a width of 21 inches (533.4 mm) and a height of 27.6 to 35.4 inches (701 to 899 mm).

[BS] BALLAST. In roofing, ballast comes in the form of large stones or paver systems or light-weight interlocking

COMMERCIAL FACILITIES [DSA-AC] Facilities whose operations will affect commerce and are intended for non-residential use by a private entity. Commercial facilities shall not include (1) facilities that are covered or expressly exempted from coverage under the Fair Housing Act of 1968, as amended (42 U.S.C. 3601 - 3631); (2) aircraft; or (3) railroad locomotives, railroad freight cars, railroad cabooses, commuter or intercity passenger rail cars (including coaches, dining cars, sleeping cars, lounge cars and food service cars), any other railroad cars described in Section 242 of the Americans With Disabilities Act or covered under Title II of the Americans With Disabilities Act, or railroad rights-of-way. For purposes of this definition, “rail” and “railroad” have the meaning given the term “railroad” in Section 202(e) of the Federal Railroad Safety Act of 1970 (45 U.S.C. 431(e)).

COMMERCIAL MOTOR VEHICLE. A motor vehicle used to transport passengers or property where the motor vehicle:

1. Has a gross vehicle weight rating of 10,000 pounds (4540 kg) or more; or
2. Is designed to transport 16 or more passengers, including the driver.

COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL. That portion of the exit access travel distance measured from the most remote point within a story to that point where the occupants have separate and distinct access to two exits or exit access doorways.

COMMON USE. Interior or exterior circulation paths, rooms, spaces or elements that are not for public use and are made available for the shared use of two or more people.

COMMON USE AREAS. [HCD 1-AC] Private use areas within multifamily residential facilities where the use of these areas is limited exclusively to owners, residents and their guests. The areas may be defined as rooms or spaces or elements inside or outside of a building.

COMMUNITY CARE FACILITY. Any facility, place or building that is maintained and operated to provide nonmedical residential care, day treatment, adult day care or foster family agency services for children, adults, or children and adults, including, but not limited to, the physically handicapped, mentally impaired, incompetent persons, and abused or neglected children, and includes the following as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 1502:

1. Residential facility
2. Adult day program
3. Therapeutic day services facility
4. Foster family agency
5. Foster family home
6. Small-family home
7. Social rehabilitation facility
8. Community treatment facility
9. Full-service adoption agency

10. Noncustodial adoption agency
11. Transitional shelter care facility
12. Transitional housing placement facility

COMPLY WITH. [DSA-AC] Comply with means to meet one or more provisions of this code.

[F] COMPRESSED GAS. A material, or mixture of materials, that:

1. Is a gas at 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 pounds per square inch atmosphere (psia) (101 kPa) of pressure; and
2. Has a boiling point of 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) which is either liquefied, nonliquefied or in solution, except those gases which have no other health- or physical-hazard properties are not considered to be compressed until the pressure in the packaging exceeds 41 psia (282 kPa) at 68°F (20°C).

The states of a compressed gas are categorized as follows:

1. Nonliquefied compressed gases are gases, other than those in solution, which are in a packaging under the charged pressure and are entirely gaseous at a temperature of 68°F (20°C).
2. Liquefied compressed gases are gases that, in a packaging under the charged pressure, are partially liquid at a temperature of 68°F (20°C).
3. Compressed gases in solution are nonliquefied gases that are dissolved in a solvent.
4. Compressed gas mixtures consist of a mixture of two or more compressed gases contained in a packaging, the hazard properties of which are represented by the properties of the mixture as a whole.

[BS] CONCRETE

Carbonate aggregate. Concrete made with aggregates consisting mainly of calcium or magnesium carbonate, such as limestone or dolomite, and containing 40 percent or less quartz, chert or flint.

Cellular. See *CELLULAR CONCRETE*.

Lightweight aggregate. Concrete made with aggregates of expanded clay, shale, slag or slate or sintered fly ash or any natural lightweight aggregate meeting ASTM C330 and possessing equivalent fire-resistance properties and weighing 85 to 115 pcf (1360 to 1840 kg/m³).

Perlite. A lightweight insulating concrete having a dry unit weight of approximately 30 pcf (480 kg/m³) made with perlite concrete aggregate. Perlite aggregate is produced from a volcanic rock which, when heated, expands to form a glass-like material of cellular structure.

Sand-lightweight. Concrete made with a combination of expanded clay, shale, slag, slate, sintered fly ash, or any natural lightweight aggregate meeting ASTM C330 and possessing equivalent fire-resistance properties and natural sand. Its unit weight is generally between 105 and 120 pcf (1680 and 1920 kg/m³).

Siliceous aggregate. Concrete made with normal-weight aggregates consisting mainly of silica or compounds other

DEFINITIONS

than calcium or magnesium carbonate, which contains more than 40-percent quartz, chert or flint.

Vermiculite. A light weight insulating concrete made with vermiculite concrete aggregate which is laminated micaceous material produced by expanding the ore at high temperatures. When added to a Portland cement slurry the resulting concrete has a dry unit weight of approximately 30 pcf (480 kg/m³).

CONGREGATE LIVING HEALTH FACILITY (CLHF)

means a residential home with a capacity, except as provided in paragraph (3), of no more than 12 beds, that provides inpatient care, including the following basic services: medical supervision, 24-hour skilled nursing and supportive care, pharmacy, dietary, social, recreational, and at least one type of service specified in paragraph (1). The primary need of congregate living health facility residents shall be for availability of skilled nursing care on a recurring, intermittent, extended, or continuous basis. This care is generally less intense than that provided in general acute care hospitals but more intense than that provided in skilled nursing facilities.

(1) Congregate living health facilities shall provide one of the following services:

(A) Services for persons who are mentally alert, persons with physical disabilities, who may be ventilator dependent.

(B) Services for persons who have a diagnosis of terminal illness, a diagnosis of a life-threatening illness, or both. Terminal illness means the individual has a life expectancy of six months or less as stated in writing by his or her attending physician and surgeon. A “life-threatening illness” means the individual has an illness that can lead to a possibility of a termination of life within five years or less as stated in writing by his or her attending physician and surgeon.

(C) Services for persons who are catastrophically and severely disabled. A person who is catastrophically and severely disabled means a person whose origin of disability was acquired through trauma or nondegenerative neurologic illness, for whom it has been determined that active rehabilitation would be beneficial and to whom these services are being provided. Services offered by a congregate living health facility to a person who is catastrophically disabled shall include, but not be limited to, speech, physical, and occupational therapy.

(2) A congregate living health facility license shall specify which of the types of persons described in paragraph (1) to whom a facility is licensed to provide services.

(3)

(A) A facility operated by a city and county for the purposes of delivering services under this section may have a capacity of 59 beds.

(B) A congregate living health facility not operated by a city and county servicing persons who are terminally ill, persons who have been diagnosed with a life-threatening illness, or both, that is located in a county with a population of 500,000 or more persons, or located in a county of the 16th class pursuant to Section 28020 of the Government Code, may have not more than 25 beds for the purpose of serving persons who are terminally ill.

(C) A congregate living health facility not operated by a city and county serving persons who are catastrophically and severely disabled, as defined in subparagraph (C) of paragraph (1) that is located in a county of 500,000 or more persons may have not more than 12 beds for the purpose of serving persons who are catastrophically and severely disabled.

(5) A congregate living health facility shall have a non-institutional, homelike environment.

CONGREGATE RESIDENCE.—Any building or portion thereof that contains facilities for living, sleeping and sanitation, as required by this code, and may include facilities for eating and cooking, for occupancy by other than a family. A congregate residence may be a shelter, convent, monastery, dormitory, fraternity or sorority house, but does not include jails, hospitals, nursing homes, hotels or lodging houses.

[F] CONSTANTLY ATTENDED LOCATION. A designated location at a facility staffed by trained personnel on a continuous basis where alarm or supervisory signals are monitored and facilities are provided for notification of the fire department or other emergency services.

[A] CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS. Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining a building permit.

CONSTRUCTION TYPES. See Section 602.

Type I. See Section 602.2.

Type II. See Section 602.2.

Type III. See Section 602.3.

Type IV. See Section 602.4.

Type V. See Section 602.5.

[F] CONTINUOUS GAS DETECTION SYSTEM. A gas detection system where the analytical instrument is maintained in continuous operation and sampling is performed without interruption. Analysis is allowed to be performed on a cyclical basis at intervals not to exceed 30 minutes.

[F] CONTROL AREA. Spaces within a building where quantities of hazardous materials not exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area are stored, dispensed, used or handled. See also the definition of “Outdoor control area” in the *California Fire Code*.

CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL. A self-compacted, cementitious material used primarily as a backfill in place of compacted fill.

[M] FIREPLACE. A hearth and fire chamber or similar prepared place in which a fire may be made and which is built in conjunction with a chimney.

FIREPLACE THROAT. The opening between the top of the firebox and the smoke chamber.

FIRESTOP, MEMBRANE PENETRATION. See “Membrane penetration firestop.”

FIRESTOP, PENETRATION. See “Penetration firestop.”

FIRESTOP SYSTEM, THROUGH PENETRATION. See “Through penetration firestop system.”

[F] FIREWORKS. Any composition or device for the purpose of producing a visible or audible effect for entertainment purposes by combustion, deflagration or detonation that meets the definition of 1.4G fireworks or 1.3G fireworks as set forth herein.

Fireworks, 1.3G. Large fireworks devices, which are explosive materials, intended for use in fireworks displays and designed to produce audible or visible effects by combustion, deflagration or detonation. Such 1.3G fireworks include, but are not limited to, firecrackers containing more than 130 milligrams (2 grains) of explosive composition, aerial shells containing more than 40 grams of pyrotechnic composition, and other display pieces which exceed the limits for classification as 1.4G fireworks. Such 1.3G fireworks are also described as fireworks, UN0335 by the DOTn.

Note: Fireworks shall have the same meaning as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 12511 which has been reprinted as follows:

12511. “Fireworks” means any device containing chemical elements and chemical compounds capable of burning independently of the oxygen of the atmosphere and producing audible, visual, mechanical, or thermal effects which are useful as pyrotechnic devices or for entertainment.

The term “fireworks” includes, but is not limited to, devices designated by the manufacturer as fireworks, torpedoes, skyrockets, roman candles, rockets, Daygo bombs, sparklers, party poppers, paper caps, chasers, fountains, smoke sparks, aerial bombs, and fireworks kits.

12512. “Fireworks kit” means any assembly of materials or explosive substances, which is designed and intended by the seller to be assembled by the person receiving such material or explosive substance and when so assembled would come within the definition of fireworks in Section 12511.

Fireworks, 1.4G. Small fireworks devices containing restricted amounts of pyrotechnic composition designed primarily to produce visible or audible effects by combustion. Such 1.4G fireworks which comply with the construction, chemical composition and labeling regulations of the DOTn for fireworks, UN0336, and the U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC) as set forth in CPSC 16 CFR: Parts 1500 and 1507, are not explosive materials for the purpose of this code.

FIXED BASE OPERATOR (FBO). A commercial business granted the right by the airport sponsor to operate on an airport and provide aeronautical services, such as fueling, hangaring, tie-down and parking, aircraft rental, aircraft maintenance and flight instruction.

FIXED SEATING. Furniture or fixture designed and installed for the use of sitting and secured in place including bench-type seats and seats with or without backs or arm rests.

FLAME SPREAD. The propagation of flame over a surface.

FLAME SPREAD INDEX. A comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from visual measurements of the spread of flame versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

[F] FLAMMABLE GAS. A material that is a gas at 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 pounds per square inch atmosphere (psia) (101 kPa) of pressure [a material that has a boiling point of 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 psia (101 kPa)] which:

1. Is ignitable at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) when in a mixture of 13 percent or less by volume with air; or
2. Has a flammable range at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) with air of at least 12 percent, regardless of the lower limit.

The limits specified shall be determined at 14.7 psi (101 kPa) of pressure and a temperature of 68°F (20°C) in accordance with ASTM E681.

[F] FLAMMABLE LIQUEFIED GAS. A liquefied compressed gas which, under a charged pressure, is partially liquid at a temperature of 68°F (20°C) and which is flammable.

[F] FLAMMABLE LIQUID. A liquid having a closed cup flash point below 100°F (38°C). Flammable liquids are further categorized into a group known as Class I liquids. The Class I category is subdivided as follows:

Class IA. Liquids having a flash point below 73°F (23°C) and a boiling point below 100°F (38°C).

Class IB. Liquids having a flash point below 73°F (23°C) and a boiling point at or above 100°F (38°C).

Class IC. Liquids having a flash point at or above 73°F (23°C) and below 100°F (38°C). The category of flammable liquids does not include compressed gases or cryogenic fluids.

[F] FLAMMABLE MATERIAL. A material capable of being readily ignited from common sources of heat or at a temperature of 600°F (316°C) or less.

[F] FLAMMABLE SOLID. A solid, other than a blasting agent or explosive, that is capable of causing fire through friction, absorption or moisture, spontaneous chemical change, or retained heat from manufacturing or processing, or which has an ignition temperature below 212°F (100°C) or which burns so vigorously and persistently when ignited as to create a serious hazard. A chemical shall be considered a flammable solid as determined in accordance with the test method of CPSC 16 CFR; Part 1500.44, if it ignites and burns with a self-sustained flame at a rate greater than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm) per second along its major axis.

DEFINITIONS

[F] FLAMMABLE VAPORS OR FUMES. The concentration of flammable constituents in air that exceed 25 percent of their lower flammable limit (LFL).

[F] FLASH POINT. The minimum temperature in degrees Fahrenheit at which a liquid will give off sufficient vapors to form an ignitable mixture with air near the surface or in the container, but will not sustain combustion. The flash point of a liquid shall be determined by appropriate test procedure and apparatus as specified in ASTM D56, ASTM D93 or ASTM D3278.

FLIGHT. A continuous run of rectangular treads, winders or combination thereof from one landing to another.

[BS] FLOOD or FLOODING. A general and temporary condition of partial or complete inundation of normally dry land from:

1. The overflow of inland or tidal waters.
2. The unusual and rapid accumulation or runoff of surface waters from any source.

[BS] FLOOD DAMAGE-RESISTANT MATERIALS. Any construction material capable of withstanding direct and prolonged contact with floodwaters without sustaining any damage that requires more than cosmetic repair.

FLOOD, DESIGN. See “Design flood.”

FLOOD ELEVATION, DESIGN. See “Design flood elevation.”

[BS] FLOOD HAZARD AREA. The greater of the following two areas:

1. The area within a flood plain subject to a 1-percent or greater chance of flooding in any year.
2. The area designated as a flood hazard area on a community’s flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.

FLOOD HAZARD AREAS, SPECIAL. See “Special flood hazard areas.”

[BS] FLOOD INSURANCE RATE MAP (FIRM). An official map of a community on which the Federal emergency Management Agency (FEMA) has delineated both the special flood hazard areas and the risk premium zones applicable to the community.

[BS] FLOOD INSURANCE STUDY. The official report provided by the Federal Emergency Management Agency containing the Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM), the Flood Boundary and Floodway Map (FBFM), the water surface elevation of the base flood and supporting technical data.

[BS] FLOODWAY. The channel of the river, creek or other watercourse and the adjacent land areas that must be reserved in order to discharge the base flood without cumulatively increasing the water surface elevation more than a designated height.

FLOOR AREA, GROSS. The floor area within the inside perimeter of the exterior walls of the building under consider-

ation, exclusive of vent shafts and courts, without deduction for corridors, stairways, ramps, closets, the thickness of interior walls, columns or other features. The floor area of a building, or portion thereof, not provided with surrounding exterior walls shall be the usable area under the horizontal projection of the roof or floor above. The gross floor area shall not include shafts with no openings or interior courts.

FLOOR AREA, NET. The actual occupied area not including unoccupied accessory areas such as corridors, stairways, ramps, toilet rooms, mechanical rooms and closets.

FLOOR FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY. A combination of a fire door, a frame, hardware and other accessories installed in a horizontal plane, which together provide a specific degree of fire protection to a through-opening in a fire-resistance-rated floor (see Section 712.1.13.1).

[F] FOAM-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM. A special system discharging a foam made from concentrates, either mechanically or chemically, over the area to be protected.

FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION. A plastic that is intentionally expanded by the use of a foaming agent to produce a reduced-density plastic containing voids consisting of open or closed cells distributed throughout the plastic for thermal insulating or acoustical purposes and that has a density less than 20 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (320 kg/m³).

[BS] FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING. Tiered seating having an overall shape and size that is capable of being reduced for purposes of moving or storing and is not a building element.

FOOD COURT. A public seating area located in the mall that serves adjacent food preparation tenant spaces.

FOSTER CARE FACILITIES. See *FOSTER FAMILY HOME*.

FOSTER FAMILY HOME. *Any residential facility providing 24-hour care for six or fewer foster children that is owned, leased or rented and is the residence of the foster parent or parents, including their family, in whose care the foster children have been placed. The placement may be by a public or private child placement agency or by a court order, or by voluntary placement by a parent, parents or guardian. It also means a foster family home described in Section 1505.2.*

[BS] FOUNDATION PIER (for Chapter 21). An isolated vertical foundation member whose horizontal dimension measured at right angles to its thickness does not exceed three times its thickness and whose height is equal to or less than four times its thickness.

FRAME STRUCTURE. A building or other structure in which vertical loads from floors and roofs are primarily supported by columns.

FREESTANDING ACUTE PSYCHIATRIC BUILDING (APB). *[OSHPD 1] A freestanding building, as defined in the California Administrative Code Section 7-111, that provides 24-hour inpatient Acute Psychiatric Services as defined in the Health and Safety Code (H&SC) Section 1250(b) or as spe-*

cial services in accordance with H&SC Section 1255(a)(5) of a general acute care hospital defined in H&SC Section 1250(a) and all structures required for their continuous operation or access/egress.

FREESTANDING SKILLED NURSING BUILDING (SNB). [OSHPD 1] A freestanding building, as defined in the California Administrative Code Section 7-111, that provides skilled nursing and/or intermediate care as defined in the Health and Safety Code Section 1250(c) or (d), and all structures required for their continuous operation or access/egress.

FULL-TIME CARE. Shall mean the establishment and routine care of persons on an hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly or permanent basis, whether for 24-hours per day or less, and where sleeping accommodations are provided.

FUNCTIONAL AREA. [DSA-AC] A room, space or area intended or designated for a group of related activities or processes.

GABLE. The triangular portion of a wall beneath the end of a dual-slope, pitched, or mono-slope roof or portion thereof and above the top plates of the story or level of the ceiling below.

GANGWAY. [DSA-AC] A variable-sloped pedestrian walkway that links a fixed structure or land with a floating structure. Gangways that connect to vessels are not addressed by this code.

[F] GAS CABINET. A fully enclosed, ventilated noncombustible enclosure used to provide an isolated environment for compressed gas cylinders in storage or use. Doors and access ports for exchanging cylinders and accessing pressure-regulating controls are allowed to be included.

[F] GAS ROOM. A separately ventilated, fully enclosed room in which only compressed gases and associated equipment and supplies are stored or used.

[F] GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEM. An assembly of piping, devices and apparatus designed to generate, store, contain, distribute or transport a nontoxic, gaseous hydrogen-containing mixture having not less than 95-percent hydrogen gas by volume and not more than 1-percent oxygen by volume. Gaseous hydrogen systems consist of items such as compressed gas containers, reactors and appurtenances, including pressure regulators, pressure relief devices, manifolds, pumps, compressors and interconnecting piping and tubing and controls.

GENERAL ACUTE CARE BUILDING (GAC Building). [OSHPD 1] Hospital buildings as defined in the California Administrative Code Section 7-111 and all structures required for their continuous operation or access/egress, except Freestanding Skilled Nursing Building (SNB) and Acute Psychiatric Building (APB).

GLASS FIBERBOARD. Fibrous glass roof insulation consisting of inorganic glass fibers formed into rigid boards using a binder. The board has a top surface faced with asphalt and kraft reinforced with glass fiber.

GOLF CAR PASSAGE. [DSA-AC] A continuous passage on which a motorized golf car can operate.

GRAB BAR. [DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC] A bar for the purpose of being grasped by the hand for support.

GRADE (Adjacent Ground Elevation). [DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC] The lowest point of elevation of the finished surface of the ground, paving or sidewalk within the area between the building and the property line or, when the property line is more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the building, between the building and a line 5 feet (1524 mm) from the building. See Health and Safety Code Section 19955.3(d).

GRADE BREAK. [DSA-AC] The line where two surface planes with different slopes meet.

[BS] GRADE (LUMBER). The classification of lumber in regard to strength and utility in accordance with American Softwood Lumber Standard DOC PS 20 and the grading rules of an approved lumber rules-writing agency.

GRADE PLANE. A reference plane representing the average of finished ground level adjoining the building at exterior walls. Where the finished ground level slopes away from the exterior walls, the reference plane shall be established by the lowest points within the area between the building and the lot line or, where the lot line is more than 6 feet (1829 mm) from the building, between the building and a point 6 feet (1829 mm) from the building.

GRADE PLANE, STORY ABOVE. See “Story above grade plane.”

GRANDSTAND. Tiered seating supported on a dedicated structural system and two or more rows high and is not a building element (see “Bleachers”).

GROSS LEASABLE AREA. The total floor area designed for tenant occupancy and exclusive use. The area of tenant occupancy is measured from the centerlines of joint partitions to the outside of the tenant walls. All tenant areas, including areas used for storage, shall be included in calculating gross leasable area.

GROUND FLOOR. The floor of a building with a building entrance on an accessible route. A building may have one or more ground floors.

GROUND LEVEL PLAY COMPONENT. [DSA-AC] A play component that is approached and exited at the ground level.

GROUP HOME. A facility that provides 24-hour care and supervision to children, provides services specified in this chapter to a specific client group, and maintains a structured environment, with such services provided at least in part by staff employed by the licensee. The care and supervision provided by a group home shall be nonmedical except as permitted by Welfare and Institutions Code Section 17736(b). Since small-family and foster family homes, by definition, care for six or fewer children only, any facility providing 24-hour care for seven or more children must be licensed as a group home.

GROUP HOME. Group Home means a facility which provides 24-hour care and supervision to children, provides ser-

DEFINITIONS

vices specified in this chapter to a specific client group, and maintains a structured environment, with such services provided at least in part by staff employed by the licensee. The care and supervision provided by a group home shall be non-medical except as permitted by Welfare and Institutions Code Section 17736(b). Since small family and foster family homes, by definition, care for six or fewer children only, any facility providing 24-hour care for seven or more children must be licensed as a group home.

[BS] GUARD [DSA-AC, HCD 1, HCD 2 & HCD 1-AC] OR GUARDRAIL. A building component or a system of building components located at or near the open sides of elevated walking surfaces that minimizes the possibility of a fall from the walking surface to a lower level.

GUEST ROOM. A room used or intended to be used by one or more guests for living or sleeping purposes.

GYPSUM BOARD. The generic name for a family of sheet products consisting of a noncombustible core primarily of gypsum with paper surfacing. Gypsum wallboard, gypsum sheathing, gypsum base for gypsum veneer plaster, exterior gypsum soffit board, predecorated gypsum board and water-resistant gypsum backing board complying with the standards listed in Tables 2506.2, 2507.2 and Chapter 35 are types of gypsum board.

[BS] GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCT. The general name for a family of sheet products consisting essentially of gypsum.

[BS] GYPSUM PLASTER. A mixture of calcined gypsum or calcined gypsum and lime and aggregate and other approved materials as specified in this code.

[BS] GYPSUM VENEER PLASTER. Gypsum plaster applied to an approved base in one or more coats normally not exceeding $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) in total thickness.

HABITABLE SPACE. A space in a building for living, sleeping, eating or cooking. Bathrooms, toilet rooms, closets, halls, storage or utility spaces and similar areas are not considered habitable spaces.

HALL CALL CONSOLE. [DSA-AC] An elevator call user interface exclusive to a destination-oriented elevator system that requires the user to select a destination floor prior to entering the elevator car.

[F] HALOGENATED EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM. A fire-extinguishing system using one or more atoms of an element from the halogen chemical series: fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine.

[F] HANDLING. The deliberate transport by any means to a point of storage or use.

[BS] HANDRAIL. A horizontal or sloping rail intended for grasping by the hand for guidance or support.

HANDWASHING FIXTURE. Refer to the California Plumbing Code, Section 210.0.

HARDBOARD. A fibrous-felted, homogeneous panel made from lignocellulosic fibers consolidated under heat and pressure in a hot press to a density not less than 31 pcf (497 kg/m³).

HARDWARE. See “Fire exit hardware” and “Panic hardware.”

[F] HAZARDOUS MATERIALS. Those chemicals or substances that are physical hazards or health hazards as classified in Section 307 and the California Fire Code, whether the materials are in usable or waste condition.

[F] HAZARDOUS PRODUCTION MATERIAL (HPM). A solid, liquid or gas associated with semiconductor manufacturing that has a degree-of-hazard rating in health, flammability or instability of Class 3 or 4 as ranked by NFPA 704 and which is used directly in research, laboratory or production processes which have as their end product materials that are not hazardous.

HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCE. [SFM] Hazardous Substance is a substance which, by reason of being explosive, flammable, toxic, poisonous, corrosive, oxidizing, irritant or otherwise harmful, is likely to cause injury.

[BS] HEAD JOINT. Vertical mortar joint placed between masonry units within the wythe at the time the masonry units are laid.

HEALTH CARE PROVIDER. [DSA-AC] See “Professional Office of a Health Care Provider”

[F] HEALTH HAZARD. A classification of a chemical for which there is statistically significant evidence that acute or chronic health effects are capable of occurring in exposed persons. The term “health hazard” includes chemicals that are toxic or highly toxic, and corrosive.

HEAT DETECTOR. See “Detector, heat.”

HEAVY TIMBER. [SFM] (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

HEIGHT, BUILDING. The vertical distance from grade plane to the average height of the highest roof surface.

HELICAL PILE. Manufactured steel deep foundation element consisting of a central shaft and one or more helical bearing plates. A helical pile is installed by rotating it into the ground. Each helical bearing plate is formed into a screw thread with a uniform defined pitch.

HELIPAD. A structural surface that is used for the landing, taking off, taxiing and parking of helicopters.

HELIPORT. An area of land or water or a structural surface that is used, or intended for the use, for the landing and taking off of helicopters, and any appurtenant areas that are used, or intended for use, for heliport buildings or other heliport facilities.

HELISTOP. The same as “heliport,” except that no fueling, defueling, maintenance, repairs or storage of helicopters is permitted.

HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL). Panels consisting of layers of cellulose fibrous material impregnated with thermosetting resins and bonded together by a high-pressure process to form a homogeneous nonporous core suitable for exterior use.

HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL) SYSTEM. An exterior wall covering fabricated using HPL in a specific assembly including joints, seams, attachments, substrate, framing and other details as appropriate to a particular design.

HIGH-RISE BUILDING. *In other than Group I-2 occupancies “high-rise buildings” as used in this code:*

Existing high-rise structure. *A high-rise structure, the construction of which is commenced or completed prior to July 1, 1974.*

High-rise structure. *Every building of any type of construction or occupancy having floors used for human occupancy located more than 75 feet above the lowest floor level having building access (see Section 403.1.2), except buildings used as hospitals as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 1250.*

New high-rise building. *A high-rise structure, the construction of which is commenced on or after July 1, 1974. For the purpose of this section, construction shall be deemed to have commenced when plans and specifications are more than 50 percent complete and have been presented to the local jurisdiction prior to July 1, 1974. Unless all provisions of this section have been met, the construction of such buildings shall commence on or before January 1, 1976.*

New high-rise structure. *A high-rise structure, the construction of which is commenced on or after July 1, 1974.*

HIGH-RISE BUILDING ACCESS. *An exterior door opening conforming to all of the following:*

1. *Suitable and available for fire department use.*
2. *Located not more than 2 feet (610 mm) above the adjacent ground level.*
3. *Leading to a space, room or area having foot traffic communication capabilities with the remainder of the building.*
4. *Designed to permit penetration through the use of fire department forcible-entry tools and equipment unless other approved arrangements have been made with the fire authority having jurisdiction.*

[F] HIGHLY TOXIC. A material which produces a lethal dose or lethal concentration that falls within any of the following categories:

1. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD₅₀) of 50 milligrams or less per kilogram of body weight when administered orally to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.
2. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD₅₀) of 200 milligrams or less per kilogram of body weight when administered by continuous contact for 24 hours (or less if death occurs within 24 hours) with the bare skin of albino rabbits weighing between 2 and 3 kilograms each.
3. A chemical that has a median lethal concentration (LC₅₀) in air of 200 parts per million by volume or less

of gas or vapor, or 2 milligrams per liter or less of mist, fume or dust, when administered by continuous inhalation for 1 hour (or less if death occurs within 1 hour) to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

Mixtures of these materials with ordinary materials, such as water, might not warrant classification as highly toxic. While this system is basically simple in application, any hazard evaluation that is required for the precise categorization of this type of material shall be performed by experienced, technically competent persons.

[A] HISTORIC BUILDINGS. Buildings that are listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places, or designated as historic under an appropriate state or local law (see Sections 3409 and 3411.9). *[DSA-AC] See “Qualified historical building or property,” C.C.R., Title 24, Part 8.*

HOLDING FACILITY. *A detention or correctional facility or area where inmates, staff and public are not housed but are restrained.*

[BF] HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY. A fire-resistance-rated floor or roof assembly of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which continuity is maintained.

HORIZONTAL EXIT. An exit component consisting of fire-resistance-rated construction and opening protectives intended to compartmentalize portions of a building thereby creating refuge areas that afford safety from the fire and smoke from the area of fire origin.

HOSPITALS AND PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS. Facilities that provide care or treatment for the medical, psychiatric, obstetrical, or surgical treatment of care recipients who are incapable of self-preservation or classified as nonambulatory or bedridden.

HOTEL OR MOTEL. [HCD 1 & HCD 2] *Any building containing six or more guest rooms intended or designed to be used, or which are used, rented or hired out to be occupied, or which are occupied for sleeping purposes by guests.*

HOUSING AT A PLACE OF EDUCATION. *Housing operated by or on behalf of an elementary, secondary, undergraduate, or postgraduate school, or other place of education, including dormitories, suites, apartments, or other places of residence.*

HOUSING UNIT. *An area intended to lodge inmates on a 24-hour basis where accommodations are provided for sleeping.*

[F] HPM ROOM. A room used in conjunction with or serving a Group H-5 occupancy, where HPM is stored or used and which is classified as a Group H-2, H-3 or H-4 occupancy.

[BS] HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS. Areas vulnerable to hurricanes defined as:

1. The U. S. Atlantic Ocean and Gulf of Mexico coasts where the ultimate design wind speed, V_{ulp} for Risk Category II buildings is greater than 115 mph (51.4 m/s); and
2. Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Guam, Virgin Islands and American Samoa.

DEFINITIONS

[F] HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOM. A room or space that is intended exclusively to house a gaseous hydrogen system.

[BS] ICE-SENSITIVE STRUCTURE. A structure for which the effect of an atmospheric ice load governs the design of a structure or portion thereof. This includes, but is not limited to, lattice structures, guyed masts, overhead lines, light suspension and cable-stayed bridges, aerial cable systems (e.g., for ski lifts or logging operations), amusement rides, open catwalks and platforms, flagpoles and signs.

IF, IF . . . THEN. [DSA-AC] *The terms “if” and “if . . . then” denote a specification that applies only when the conditions described are present.*

IGNITION-RESISTANT MATERIAL. [SFM] *(See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)*

[F] IMMEDIATELY DANGEROUS TO LIFE AND HEALTH (IDLH). The concentration of air-borne contaminants which poses a threat of death, immediate or delayed permanent adverse health effects, or effects that could prevent escape from such an environment. This contaminant concentration level is established by the National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) based on both toxicity and flammability. It generally is expressed in parts per million by volume (ppmv/v) or milligrams per cubic meter (mg/m³). If adequate data do not exist for precise establishment of IDLH concentrations, an independent certified industrial hygienist, industrial toxicologist, appropriate regulatory agency or other source approved by the building official shall make such determination.

[BS] IMPACT LOAD. The load resulting from moving machinery, elevators, craneways, vehicles and other similar forces and kinetic loads, pressure and possible surcharge from fixed or moving loads.

INCIDENTAL STRUCTURAL ALTERATIONS, ADDITIONS, OR REPAIRS. [OSHPD 1, 2 & 4] *Alterations, additions or repairs which would not reduce the story lateral shear force-resisting capacity by more than 5 percent or increase the story shear by more than 5 percent in any existing story or a combination thereof with equivalent effect (not exceeding 5 percent total). The calculation of lateral shear force-resisting capacity and story shear shall account for the cumulative effects of additions and alterations since original construction.*

INCAPABLE OF SELF-PRESERVATION. Persons who, because of age, physical limitations, mental limitations, chemical dependency or medical treatment, cannot respond as an individual to an emergency situation.

[F] INCOMPATIBLE MATERIALS. Materials that, when mixed, have the potential to react in a manner that generates heat, fumes, gases or byproducts which are hazardous to life or property.

[F] INERT GAS. A gas that is capable of reacting with other materials only under abnormal conditions such as high temperatures, pressures and similar extrinsic physical forces. Within the context of the code, inert gases do not exhibit either physical or health hazard properties as defined (other

than acting as a simple asphyxiant) or hazard properties other than those of a compressed gas. Some of the more common inert gases include argon, helium, krypton, neon, nitrogen and xenon.

INFANT. *Any child who because of age only, is unable to walk and requires the aid of another person to evacuate the building. In no case shall the term “infant” mean a child 2 years of age or older.*

[F] INITIATING DEVICE. A system component that originates transmission of a change-of-state condition, such as in a smoke detector, manual fire alarm box or supervisory switch.

INLET. *A fitting or fixture through which circulation water enters the pool.*

INTENDED TO BE OCCUPIED AS A RESIDENCE. This refers to a dwelling unit or sleeping unit that can or will be used all or part of the time as the occupant’s place of abode.

INTERIOR EXIT RAMP. An exit component that serves to meet one or more means of egress design requirements, such as required number of exits or exit access travel distance, and provides for a protected path of egress travel to the exit discharge or public way.

INTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAY. An exit component that serves to meet one or more means of egress design requirements, such as required number of exits or exit access travel distance, and provides for a protected path of egress travel to the exit discharge or public way.

INTERIOR FINISH. Interior finish includes interior wall and ceiling finish and interior floor finish.

INTERIOR FLOOR FINISH. The exposed floor surfaces of buildings including coverings applied over a finished floor or stair, including risers.

INTERIOR FLOOR-WALL BASE. Interior floor finish trim used to provide a functional or decorative border at the intersection of walls and floors.

INTERIOR SURFACES. Surfaces other than weather exposed surfaces.

INTERIOR WALL AND CEILING FINISH. The exposed interior surfaces of buildings, including but not limited to: fixed or movable walls and partitions; toilet room privacy partitions; columns; ceilings; and interior wainscoting, paneling or other finish applied structurally or for decoration, acoustical correction, surface insulation, structural fire resistance or similar purposes, but not including trim.

[BS] INTERLAYMENT. A layer of felt or nonbituminous saturated felt not less than 18 inches (457 mm) wide, shingled between each course of a wood-shake roof covering.

INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY. *The symbol adopted by Rehabilitation International’s 11th World Congress for the purpose of indicating that buildings and facilities are accessible to persons with disabilities.*

PENETRATION FIRESTOP. A through-penetration firestop or a membrane-penetration firestop.

PENTHOUSE. An enclosed, unoccupied rooftop structure used for sheltering mechanical and electrical equipment, tanks, elevators and related machinery, and vertical shaft openings.

[BS] PERFORMANCE CATEGORY. A designation of wood structural panels as related to the panel performance used in Chapter 23.

PERMANENT. *[DSA-AC] Facilities which, are intended to be used for periods longer than those designated in this code under the definition of “Temporary.”*

PERMANENT PORTABLE BUILDING. *[SFM] A portable building that is used to serve or house students and is certified as a permanent building on a new public school campus by the public school administration shall comply with the requirements of new campus buildings.*

[A] PERMIT. An official document or certificate issued by the building official that authorizes performance of a specified activity.

[A] PERSON. An individual, heirs, executors, administrators or assigns, and also includes a firm, partnership or corporation, its or their successors or assigns, or the agent of any of the aforesaid.

PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES. *[HCD 1-AC] For purposes of Chapter 11A, “Persons with disabilities” includes, but is not limited to, any physical or mental disability as defined in Government Code Section 12926.*

PERSONS WITH INTELLECTUAL DISABILITIES, PROFOUNDLY OR SEVERELY. *Shall mean any persons with intellectual disabilities who is unable to evacuate a building unassisted during emergency conditions.*

Note: The determination as to such incapacity shall be made by the Director of the State Department of Public Health or his or her designated representative pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13131.3.

PHOTOLUMINESCENT. Having the property of emitting light that continues for a length of time after excitation by visible or invisible light has been removed.

PHOTOVOLTAIC MODULE. A complete, environmentally protected unit consisting of solar cells, optics and other components, exclusive of tracker, designed to generate DC power when exposed to sunlight.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL. A collection of modules mechanically fastened together, wired and designed to provide a field-installable unit.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEM. A system that incorporates discrete photovoltaic panels, that converts solar radiation into electricity, including rack support systems.

PHOTOVOLTAIC SHINGLES. A roof covering resembling shingles that incorporates photovoltaic modules.

[F] PHYSICAL HAZARD. A chemical for which there is evidence that it is a combustible liquid, cryogenic fluid, explosive, flammable (solid, liquid or gas), organic peroxide

(solid or liquid), oxidizer (solid or liquid), oxidizing gas, pyrophoric (solid, liquid or gas), unstable (reactive) material (solid, liquid or gas) or water-reactive material (solid or liquid).

[F] PHYSIOLOGICAL WARNING THRESHOLD LEVEL. A concentration of air-borne contaminants, normally expressed in parts per million (ppm) or milligrams per cubic meter (mg/m³), that represents the concentration at which persons can sense the presence of the contaminant due to odor, irritation or other quick-acting physiological response. When used in conjunction with the permissible exposure limit (PEL) the physiological warning threshold levels are those consistent with the classification system used to establish the PEL. See the definition of “Permissible exposure limit (PEL)” in the *California Fire Code*.

PICTOGRAM. A pictorial symbol that represents activities, facilities, or concepts.

PLACE OF PUBLIC ACCOMMODATION. *A facility operated by a private entity whose operations affect commerce and fall within at least one of the following categories:*

- (1) *Place of lodging, except for an establishment located within a facility that contains not more than five rooms for rent or hire and that actually is occupied by the proprietor of the establishment as the residence of the proprietor. For purposes of this code, a facility is a “place of lodging” if it is*
 - (i) *An inn, hotel or motel; or*
 - (ii) *A facility that*
 - (A) *Provides guest rooms for sleeping for stays that primarily are short-term in nature (generally 30 days or less) where the occupant does not have the right to return to a specific room or unit after the conclusion of his or her stay; and*
 - (B) *Provides guest rooms under conditions and with amenities similar to a hotel, motel, or inn, including the following:*
 - (1) *On- or off-site management and reservations service;*
 - (2) *Rooms available on a walk-up or call-in basis;*
 - (3) *Availability of housekeeping or linen service; and*
 - (4) *Acceptance of reservations for a guest room type without guaranteeing a particular unit or room until check-in, and without a prior lease or security deposit.*
- (2) *A restaurant, bar, or other establishment serving food or drink;*
- (3) *A motion picture house, theater, concert hall, stadium, or other place of exhibition or entertainment;*
- (4) *An auditorium, convention center, lecture hall, or other place of public gathering;*

DEFINITIONS

- (5) A bakery, grocery store, clothing store, hardware store, shopping center, or other sales or rental establishment;
- (6) A laundromat, dry-cleaner, bank, barber shop, beauty shop, travel service, shoe repair service, funeral parlor, gas station, office of an accountant or lawyer, pharmacy, insurance office, professional office of a health care provider, hospital, or other service establishment;
- (7) A terminal, depot, or other station used for specified public transportation;
- (8) A museum, library, gallery, or other place of public display or collection;
- (9) A park, zoo, amusement park, or other place of recreation;
- (10) A nursery, elementary, secondary, undergraduate, or postgraduate private school, or other place of education;
- (11) A day-care center, senior citizen center, homeless shelter, food bank, adoption agency, or other social service center establishment;
- (12) A gymnasium, health spa, bowling alley, golf course, or other place of exercise or recreation;
- (13) A religious facility;
- (14) An office building; and
- (15) A public curb or sidewalk.

PLACE OF RELIGIOUS WORSHIP. See “Religious worship, place of.”

PLASTIC, APPROVED. Any thermoplastic, thermosetting or reinforced thermosetting plastic material that conforms to combustibility classifications specified in the section applicable to the application and plastic type.

PLASTIC COMPOSITE. A generic designation that refers to wood/plastic composites and plastic lumber.

PLASTIC GLAZING. Plastic materials that are glazed or set in frame or sash and not held by mechanical fasteners that pass through the glazing material.

[BS] PLASTIC LUMBER. A manufactured product made primarily of plastic materials (filled or unfilled) which is generally rectangular in cross section.

PLATFORM. A raised area within a building used for worship, the presentation of music, plays or other entertainment; the head table for special guests; the raised area for lecturers and speakers; boxing and wrestling rings; theater-in-the-round stages; and similar purposes wherein, other than horizontal sliding curtains, there are no overhead hanging curtains, drops, scenery or stage effects other than lighting and sound. A temporary platform is one installed for not more than 30 days.

PLATFORM (WHEELCHAIR) LIFT. A hoisting and lowering mechanism equipped with a car or platform or support that serves two landings of a building or structure and is

designed to carry a passenger or passengers and/or luggage or other material a vertical distance as may be allowed.

PLAY AREA. [DSA-AC] A portion of a site containing play components designed and constructed for children.

PLAY COMPONENT. [DSA-AC] An element intended to generate specific opportunities for play, socialization or learning. Play components are manufactured or natural; and are stand-alone or part of a composite play structure.

POINT-OF-SALE DEVICE. [DSA-AC] A device used for the purchase of a good or service where a personal identification number (PIN), zip code or signature is required.

POLYPROPYLENE SIDING. A shaped material, made principally from polypropylene homopolymer, or copolymer, which in some cases contains fillers or reinforcements, that is used to clad exterior walls of buildings.

POOL. A constructed or prefabricated artificial basin, chamber or tank intended to be used primarily by bathers, and not for cleaning of the body or for individual therapeutic use.

POOL USER. A person using a pool and ancillary facilities for the purpose of water activities such as diving, swimming or wading.

POOL VOLUME. The amount of water expressed in gallons (liters) that a pool holds when filled.

[BS] PORCELAIN TILE. Tile that conforms to the requirements of ANSI A137.1 Section 3.0 for ceramic tile having an absorption of 0.5 percent or less in accordance with ANSI A137.1 Section 4.1 and Section 6.1 Table 10. ||

[BS] POSITIVE ROOF DRAINAGE. The drainage condition in which consideration has been made for all loading deflections of the roof deck, and additional slope has been provided to ensure drainage of the roof within 48 hours of precipitation.

POWDER ROOM. A room containing a water closet (toilet) and a lavatory, and which is not defined as a bathroom.

POWER-ASSISTED DOOR. [DSA-AC] A door used for human passage with a mechanism that helps to open the door, or relieves the opening resistance of a door, upon the activation of a switch or a continued force applied to the door itself.

POWER-OPERATED DOOR. Swinging, sliding, or folding door which opens automatically when approached by a pedestrian or opens automatically upon an action by a pedestrian. The door closes automatically and includes provisions such as presence sensors to prevent entrapment. See “Low energy power-operated door” and “Power-assisted door.”

[BS] PREFABRICATED WOOD I-JOIST. Structural member manufactured using sawn or structural composite lumber flanges and wood structural panel webs bonded together with exterior exposure adhesives, which forms an “I” cross-sectional shape.

SIDEWALK. *A surfaced pedestrian way contiguous to a street used by the public. (As differentiated from the definition of “Walk”.)*

SIGN. [DSA-AC] *An element composed of displayed textual, symbolic, tactile, and/or pictorial information.*

SIGNIFICANT LOSS OF FUNCTION. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1, 2, & 4] *Significant loss of function for equipment or components means the equipment or component cannot be restored to its original function by competent technicians after a design earthquake because the equipment or component require parts that are not normally stocked by the owner or not readily available.*

SINGLE-ACCOMMODATION SANITARY FACILITY. [HCD 1-AC] *A room that has not more than one of each type of sanitary fixture, is intended for use by only one person at a time, has no partition around the toilet, and has a door that can be locked on the inside by the room occupant.*

[BS] SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE. A roofing membrane that is field applied using one layer of membrane material (either homogeneous or composite) rather than multiple layers.

[F] SINGLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM. An assembly incorporating the detector, the control equipment and the alarm-sounding device in one unit, operated from a power supply either in the unit or obtained at the point of installation.

SINK. *A fixed bowl or basin with running water and drain-pipe, as in a kitchen or laundry, for washing dishes, clothing, etc. (As differentiated from the definition of “Lavatory”.)*

SITE. A parcel of land bounded by a lot line or a designated portion of a public right-of-way.

[BS] SITE CLASS. A classification assigned to a site based on the types of soils present and their engineering properties as defined in Section 1613.3.2.

[BS] SITE COEFFICIENTS. The values of F_a and F_v , indicated in Tables 1613.3.3(1) and 1613.3.3(2), respectively.

SITE DEVELOPMENT. [HCD 1-AC] *“On-site” and “off-site” work, including, but not limited to, walks, sidewalks, ramps, curbs, curb ramps, parking facilities, stairs, planting areas, pools, promenades, exterior gathering or assembly areas and raised or depressed paved areas.*

SITE-FABRICATED STRETCH SYSTEM. A system, fabricated on site and intended for acoustical, tackable or aesthetic purposes, that is composed of three elements:

1. A frame (constructed of plastic, wood, metal or other material) used to hold fabric in place,
2. A core material (infill, with the correct properties for the application), and
3. An outside layer, composed of a textile, fabric or vinyl, that is stretched taut and held in place by tension or mechanical fasteners via the frame.

SKYLIGHT, UNIT. A factory-assembled, glazed fenestration unit, containing one panel of glazing material that allows for natural lighting through an opening in the roof assembly while preserving the weather-resistant barrier of the roof.

SKYLIGHTS AND SLOPED GLAZING. Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or more from vertical. Glazing material in skylights, including unit skylights, tubular daylighting devices, solariums, sunrooms, roofs and sloped walls, are included in this definition.

SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS. *Rooms intended and designed for sleeping.*

SLEEPING UNIT. A room or space in which people sleep, which can also include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of a dwelling unit are not sleeping units.

SLIP RESISTANT. *A rough finish that is not abrasive to the bare foot.*

SLOPE. [HCD 1-AC] *The relative steepness of the land between two points and is calculated as follows:*

The horizontal distance and elevation change between the two points (e.g., an entrance and a passenger loading zone). The difference in elevation is divided by the distance and the resulting fraction is multiplied by 100 to obtain the percentage of slope.

For example: if a principal entrance is 10 feet (3048 mm) from a passenger loading zone, and the principal entrance is raised 1 foot (305 mm) higher than the passenger loading zone, then the slope is $1/10 \times 100 = 10$ percent.

SMALL MANAGEMENT YARD. *An exterior exercise yard within a Group I-3 prison used for inmate exercise for a maximum of 2 hours per day, constructed in accordance with Section 408.1.2.3.*

[F] SMOKE ALARM. A single- or multiple-station alarm responsive to smoke. See “Multiple-station smoke alarm” and “Single-station smoke alarm.”

SMOKE BARRIER. A continuous membrane, either vertical or horizontal, such as a wall, floor or ceiling assembly, that is designed and constructed to restrict the movement of smoke.

SMOKE COMPARTMENT. A space within a building enclosed by smoke barriers on all sides, including the top and bottom.

SMOKE DAMPER. A listed device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to resist the passage of smoke. The device is installed to operate automatically, controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.

[F] SMOKE DETECTOR. A listed device that senses visible or invisible particles of combustion.

SMOKE-DEVELOPED INDEX. A comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from measurements of smoke obscuration versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING. Seating served by means of egress that is not subject to smoke accumulation within or under a structure.

SMOKEPROOF ENCLOSURE. An exit stairway or ramp designed and constructed so that the movement of the prod-

DEFINITIONS

ucts of combustion produced by a fire occurring in any part of the building into the enclosure is limited.

SOFT CONTAINED PLAY STRUCTURE. [DSA-AC] A play structure made up of one or more play components where the user enters a fully enclosed play environment that utilizes pliable materials, such as plastic, netting or fabric.

[F] SOLID. A material that has a melting point, decomposes or sublimates at a temperature greater than 68°F (20°C).

SPACE. A definable area, such as, a room, toilet room, hall, assembly area, entrance, storage room, alcove, courtyard, or lobby.

SPC 1, SPC 2, SPC 3, SPC 4, SPC 4D and SPC 5. [OSHPD 1] Building structural performance categories for Hospital Buildings defined in Table 2.5.3 of California Administrative Code (Part 1, Title 24 CCR), Chapter 6.

SPC BUILDING. [OSHPD 1] Means a structure with an independent vertical and lateral force-resisting system (LFRS) and a distinct building structural performance category assigned by OSHPD.

SPECIAL AMUSEMENT BUILDING. A special amusement building is any temporary or permanent building or portion thereof that is occupied for amusement, entertainment or educational purposes and that contains a device or system that conveys passengers or provides a walkway along, around or over a course in any direction so arranged that the means of egress path is not readily apparent due to visual or audio distractions or is intentionally confounded or is not readily available because of the nature of the attraction or mode of conveyance through the building or structure.

[BS] SPECIAL FLOOD HAZARD AREA. The land area subject to flood hazards and shown on a Flood Insurance Rate Map or other flood hazard map as Zone A, AE, A1-30, A99, AR, AO, AH, V, VO, VE or V1-30.

[BS] SPECIAL INSPECTION. Inspection of construction requiring the expertise of an approved special inspector in order to ensure compliance with this code and the approved construction documents.

Continuous special inspection. Special inspection by the special inspector who is present continuously when and where the work to be inspected is being performed.

Periodic special inspection. Special inspection by the special inspector who is intermittently present where the work to be inspected has been or is being performed.

SPECIAL INSPECTOR. A qualified person employed or retained by an approved agency and approved by the building official as having the competence necessary to inspect a particular type of construction requiring special inspection.

[BS] SPECIAL STRUCTURAL WALL. See Section 1905.1.1.

[BS] SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF MASONRY, f'_m . Minimum compressive strength, expressed as force per unit of net cross-sectional area, required of the masonry used in construction by the approved construction documents, and upon which the project design is based.

Whenever the quantity f'_m is under the radical sign, the square root of numerical value only is intended and the result has units of pounds per square inch (psi) (MPa).

SPECIFIED PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION. [DSA-AC] Transportation by bus, rail, or any other conveyance (other than aircraft) provided by a private entity to the general public, with general or special service (including charter service) on a regular and continuing basis.

[BS] SPLICE. The result of a factory and/or field method of joining or connecting two or more lengths of a fire-resistant joint system into a continuous entity.

SPORT ACTIVITY, AREA OF. See “Area of sport activity.”

SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS. Cementitious or fibrous materials that are sprayed to provide fire-resistant protection of the substrates.

STAGE. A space within a building utilized for entertainment or presentations, which includes overhead hanging curtains, drops, scenery or stage effects other than lighting and sound.

STAIR. A change in elevation, consisting of one or more risers.

STAIRS. A series of two or more steps.

STAIRWAY. One or more flights of stairs, either exterior or interior, with the necessary landings and platforms connecting them, to form a continuous and uninterrupted passage from one level to another.

STAIRWAY, EXIT ACCESS. See “Exit access stairway.”

STAIRWAY, EXTERIOR EXIT. See “Exterior exit stairway.”

STAIRWAY, INTERIOR EXIT. See “Interior exit stairway.”

STAIRWAY, SCISSOR. See “Scissor stairway.”

STAIRWAY, SPIRAL. A stairway having a closed circular form in its plan view with uniform section-shaped treads attached to and radiating from a minimum-diameter supporting column.

[F] STANDBY POWER SYSTEM. A source of automatic electric power of a required capacity and duration to operate required building, hazardous materials or ventilation systems in the event of a failure of the primary power. Standby power systems are required for electrical loads where interruption of the primary power could create hazards or hamper rescue or fire-fighting operations.

[F] STANDPIPE SYSTEM, CLASSES OF. Standpipe classes are as follows:

Class I system. A system providing 2½-inch (64 mm) hose connections to supply water for use by fire departments and those trained in handling heavy fire streams.

Class II system. A system providing 1½-inch (38 mm) hose stations to supply water for use primarily by the building occupants or by the fire department during initial response.

Class III system. A system providing 1½-inch (38 mm) hose stations to supply water for use by building occupants and 2½-inch (64 mm) hose connections to supply a larger volume of water for use by fire departments and those trained in handling heavy fire streams.

[F] STANDPIPE, TYPES OF. Standpipe types are as follows:

Automatic dry. A dry standpipe system, normally filled with pressurized air, that is arranged through the use of a device, such as dry pipe valve, to admit water into the system piping automatically upon the opening of a hose valve. The water supply for an automatic dry standpipe system shall be capable of supplying the system demand.

Automatic wet. A wet standpipe system that has a water supply that is capable of supplying the system demand automatically.

Manual dry. A dry standpipe system that does not have a permanent water supply attached to the system. Manual dry standpipe systems require water from a fire department pumper to be pumped into the system through the fire department connection in order to meet the system demand.

Manual wet. A wet standpipe system connected to a water supply for the purpose of maintaining water within the system but does not have a water supply capable of delivering the system demand attached to the system. Manual-wet standpipe systems require water from a fire department pumper (or the like) to be pumped into the system in order to meet the system demand.

Semiautomatic dry. A dry standpipe system that is arranged through the use of a device, such as a deluge valve, to admit water into the system piping upon activation of a remote control device located at a hose connection. A remote control activation device shall be provided at each hose connection. The water supply for a semiautomatic dry standpipe system shall be capable of supplying the system demand.

START OF CONSTRUCTION. The date of issuance for new construction and substantial improvements to existing structures, provided the actual start of construction, repair, reconstruction, rehabilitation, addition, placement or other improvement is within 180 days after the date of issuance. The actual start of construction means the first placement of permanent construction of a building (including a manufactured home) on a site, such as the pouring of a slab or footings, installation of pilings or construction of columns.

Permanent construction does not include land preparation (such as clearing, excavation, grading or filling), the installation of streets or walkways, excavation for a basement, footings, piers or foundations, the erection of temporary forms or the installation of accessory buildings such as garages or sheds not occupied as dwelling units or not part of the main building. For a substantial improvement, the actual “start of construction” means the first alteration of any wall, ceiling,

floor or other structural part of a building, whether or not that alteration affects the external dimensions of the building.

STATE-OWNED/LEASED BUILDING. [SFM] *State-Owned/Leased Building is a building or portion of a building that is owned, leased or rented by the state. State-leased buildings shall include all required exits to a public way serving such leased area or space. Portions of state-leased buildings that are not leased or rented by the state shall not be included within the scope of this section unless such portions present an exposure hazard to the state-leased area or space.*

STATE RESPONSIBILITY AREA. [SFM] (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for definition of term.)

[BS] STEEL CONSTRUCTION, COLD-FORMED. That type of construction made up entirely or in part of steel structural members cold formed to shape from sheet or strip steel such as roof deck, floor and wall panels, studs, floor joists, roof joists and other structural elements.

[BS] STEEL ELEMENT, STRUCTURAL. Any steel structural member of a building or structure consisting of rolled shapes, pipe, hollow structural sections, plates, bars, sheets, rods or steel castings other than cold-formed steel or steel joist members.

[BS] STEEL JOIST. Any steel structural member of a building or structure made of hot-rolled or cold-formed solid or open-web sections, or riveted or welded bars, strip or sheet steel members, or slotted and expanded, or otherwise deformed rolled sections.

STEEP SLOPE. A roof slope greater than two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope).

STEP. A riser and tread.

STEPS, RECESSED STEPS, LADDERS AND RECESSED TREADS. *Those means of entry and exit to and from the pool which may be used in conjunction with each other.*

[BS] STONE MASONRY. Masonry composed of field, quarried or cast stone units bonded by mortar.

[F] STORAGE, HAZARDOUS MATERIALS. The keeping, retention or leaving of hazardous materials in closed containers, tanks, cylinders, or similar vessels; or vessels supplying operations through closed connections to the vessel.

[BS] STORAGE RACKS. Cold-formed or hot-rolled steel structural members which are formed into steel storage racks, including pallet storage racks, movable-shelf racks, rack-supported systems, automated storage and retrieval systems (stacker racks), push-back racks, pallet-flow racks, case-flow racks, pick modules and rack-supported platforms. Other types of racks, such as drive-in or drive-through racks, cantilever racks, portable racks or racks made of materials other than steel, are not considered storage racks for the purpose of this code.

[BS] STORM SHELTER. A building, structure or portions thereof, constructed in accordance with ICC 500 and design-

DEFINITIONS

nated for use during a severe wind storm event, such as a hurricane or tornado.

Community storm shelter. A storm shelter not defined as a “Residential storm shelter.”

Residential storm shelter. A storm shelter serving occupants of dwelling units and having an occupant load not exceeding 16 persons.

STORY. That portion of a building included between the upper surface of a floor and the upper surface of the floor or roof next above (see “Basement,” “Building height,” “Grade plane” and “Mezzanine”). A story is measured as the vertical distance from top to top of two successive tiers of beams or finished floor surfaces and, for the topmost story, from the top of the floor finish to the top of the ceiling joists or, where there is not a ceiling, to the top of the roof rafters.

[DSA-AC] That portion of a building or facility designed for human occupancy included between the upper surface of a floor and upper surface of the floor or roof next above. A story containing one or more mezzanines has more than one floor level. If the finished floor level directly above a basement or unused under-floor space is more than six feet (1829 mm) above grade for more than 50 percent of the total perimeter or is more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above grade at any point, the basement or unused under-floor space shall be considered as a story.

STORY ABOVE GRADE PLANE. Any story having its finished floor surface entirely above grade plane, or in which the finished surface of the floor next above is:

1. More than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade plane; or
2. More than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the finished ground level at any point.

[BS] STRENGTH (For Chapter 21).

Design strength. Nominal strength multiplied by a strength reduction factor.

Nominal strength. Strength of a member or cross section calculated in accordance with these provisions before application of any strength-reduction factors.

Required strength. Strength of a member or cross section required to resist factored loads.

[BS] STRENGTH (For Chapter 16).

Nominal strength. The capacity of a structure or member to resist the effects of loads, as determined by computations using specified material strengths and dimensions and equations derived from accepted principles of structural mechanics or by field tests or laboratory tests of scaled models, allowing for modeling effects and differences between laboratory and field conditions.

Required strength. Strength of a member, cross section or connection required to resist factored loads or related internal moments and forces in such combinations as stipulated by these provisions.

Strength design. A method of proportioning structural members such that the computed forces produced in the members by factored loads do not exceed the member design strength [also called “load and resistance factor design” (LRFD)]. The term “strength design” is used in the design of concrete and masonry structural elements.

[BS] STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER. Structural member manufactured using wood elements bonded together with exterior adhesives. Examples of structural composite lumber are:

Laminated strand lumber (LSL). A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.10 inch (2.54 mm) or less and their average lengths not less than 150 times the least dimension of the wood strand elements.

Laminated veneer lumber (LVL). A composite of wood veneer sheet elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the veneer element thicknesses are 0.25 inches (6.4 mm) or less.

Oriented strand lumber (OSL). A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.10 inches (2.54 mm) or less and their average lengths not less than 75 times and less than 150 times the least dimension of the strand elements.

Parallel strand lumber (PSL). A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.25 inches (6.4 mm) or less and their average lengths not less than 300 times the least dimension of the wood strand elements.

STRUCTURAL FRAME. *[DSA-AC] The columns and the girders, beams and trusses having direct connections to the columns and all other members that are essential to the stability of the building or facility as a whole.*

[BS] STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER. An engineered, stress-rated product of a timber laminating plant, comprised of assemblies of specially selected and prepared wood laminations in which the grain of all laminations is approximately parallel longitudinally and the laminations are bonded with adhesives.

[BS] STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION. The visual observation of the structural system by a registered design professional for general conformance to the approved construction documents.

[A] STRUCTURE. That which is built or constructed.

SUBSTANTIAL DAMAGE. Damage of any origin sustained by a structure whereby the cost of restoring the structure to its before-damaged condition would equal or exceed 50 percent of the market value of the structure before the damage occurred.

SUBSTANTIAL IMPROVEMENT. Any repair, reconstruction, rehabilitation, alteration, addition or other improve-

TRANSIT BOARDING PLATFORM. [DSA-AC] *A horizontal, generally level surface, whether raised above, recessed below or level with a transit rail, from which persons embark/disembark a fixed rail vehicle.*

TRANSITION PLATE. [DSA-AC] *A sloping pedestrian walking surface located at the end(s) of a gangway.*

TREAD. *The horizontal part of a step.*

[BS] TREATED WOOD. Wood products that are conditioned to enhance fire-retardant or preservative properties.

Fire-retardant-treated wood. Wood products that, when impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process or other means during manufacture, exhibit reduced surface-burning characteristics and resist propagation of fire.

Preservative-treated wood. Wood products that, conditioned with chemicals by a pressure process or other means, exhibit reduced susceptibility to damage by fungi, insects or marine borers.

TREATMENT OF WATER. *The process of conditioning and disinfection of pool water by means of a combination of filtration and the addition of chemicals to the water.*

TRIM. Picture molds, chair rails, baseboards, handrails, door and window frames and similar decorative or protective materials used in fixed applications.

[F] TROUBLE SIGNAL. A signal initiated by the fire alarm system or device indicative of a fault in a monitored circuit or component.

TTY. *An abbreviation for teletypewriter. Machinery that employs interactive text-based communication through the transmission of coded signals across the telephone network. TTYS may include, for example, devices known as TDDs (telecommunication display devices or telecommunication devices for deaf persons) or computers with special modems. TTYS are also called text telephones.*

[BS] TUBULAR DAYLIGHTING DEVICE (TDD). A non-operable fenestration unit primarily designed to transmit daylight from a roof surface to an interior ceiling via a tubular conduit. The basic unit consists of an exterior glazed weathering surface, a light-transmitting tube with a reflective interior surface, and an interior-sealing device such as a translucent ceiling panel. The unit can be factory assembled, or field-assembled from a manufactured kit.

24-HOUR BASIS. See “24-hour basis” located preceding “AAC masonry.”

TURNOVER TIME. *The period of time, in hours, required to circulate a volume of water equal to the pool capacity.*

[BS] UNDERLAYMENT. One or more layers of felt, sheathing paper, nonbituminous saturated felt or other approved material over which a steep-slope roof covering is applied.

UNIFORMITY COEFFICIENT. *The ratio of theoretical size of a sieve that will pass 60 percent of the sand to the theoretical size of sieve that will pass 10 percent.*

UNIT SKYLIGHT. See “Skylight, unit.”

UNREASONABLE HARDSHIP. *When the enforcing agency finds that compliance with the building standard would make the specific work of the project affected by the building standard infeasible, based on an overall evaluation of the following factors:*

1. *The cost of providing access.*
2. *The cost of all construction contemplated.*
3. *The impact of proposed improvements on financial feasibility of the project.*
4. *The nature of the accessibility which would be gained or lost.*
5. *The nature of the use of the facility under construction and its availability to persons with disabilities.*

The details of any finding of unreasonable hardship shall be recorded and entered in the files of the enforcing agency.

[F] UNSTABLE (REACTIVE) MATERIAL. A material, other than an explosive, which in the pure state or as commercially produced, will vigorously polymerize, decompose, condense or become self-reactive and undergo other violent chemical changes, including explosion, when exposed to heat, friction or shock, or in the absence of an inhibitor, or in the presence of contaminants, or in contact with incompatible materials. Unstable (reactive) materials are subdivided as follows:

Class 4. Materials that in themselves are readily capable of detonation or explosive decomposition or explosive reaction at normal temperatures and pressures. This class includes materials that are sensitive to mechanical or localized thermal shock at normal temperatures and pressures.

Class 3. Materials that in themselves are capable of detonation or of explosive decomposition or explosive reaction but which require a strong initiating source or which must be heated under confinement before initiation. This class includes materials that are sensitive to thermal or mechanical shock at elevated temperatures and pressures.

Class 2. Materials that in themselves are normally unstable and readily undergo violent chemical change but do not detonate. This class includes materials that can undergo chemical change with rapid release of energy at normal temperatures and pressures, and that can undergo violent chemical change at elevated temperatures and pressures.

Class 1. Materials that in themselves are normally stable but which can become unstable at elevated temperatures and pressure.

[F] USE (MATERIAL). Placing a material into action, including solids, liquids and gases.

USE ZONE. [DSA-AC] *The ground level area beneath and immediately adjacent to a play structure or play equipment that is designated by ASTM F1487 for unrestricted circulation around the play equipment and where it is predicted that a user would land when falling from or exiting the play equipment.*

VALUATION THRESHOLD. [DSA-AC] *An annually adjusted, dollar-amount figure used in part to determine the*

DEFINITIONS

extent of required path of travel upgrades. The baseline valuation threshold of \$50,000 is based on the January 1981, "ENR US20 Cities" Average Construction Cost Index (CCI) of 3372.02 as published in Engineering News Record, McGraw Hill Publishing Company. The current valuation threshold is determined by multiplying the baseline valuation threshold by a ratio of the current year's January CCI to the baseline January 1981 CCI.

VAPOR PERMEABLE MEMBRANE. The property of having a moisture vapor permeance rating of 5 perms (2.9×10^{-10} kg/Pa \times s \times m²) or greater, when tested in accordance with the desiccant method using Procedure A of ASTM E96. A vapor permeable material permits the passage of moisture vapor.

VAPOR RETARDER CLASS. A measure of a material or assembly's ability to limit the amount of moisture that passes through that material or assembly. Vapor retarder class shall be defined using the desiccant method of ASTM E96 as follows:

Class I: 0.1 perm or less.

Class II: $0.1 < \text{perm} \leq 1.0$ perm.

Class III: $1.0 < \text{perm} \leq 10$ perm.

VARIABLE MESSAGE SIGNS (VMS). [DSA-AC] *Electronic signs that have a message with the capacity to change by means of scrolling, streaming, or paging across a background.*

VARIABLE MESSAGE SIGN (VMS) CHARACTERS. [DSA-AC] *Characters of an electronic sign are composed of pixels in an array. High resolution VMS characters have vertical pixel counts of 16 rows or greater. Low resolution VMS characters have vertical pixel counts of 7 to 15 rows.*

VEGETATIVE ROOF. An assembly of interacting components designed to waterproof and normally insulate a building's top surface that includes, by design, vegetation and related landscape elements.

VEHICLE BARRIER. A component, or a system of components, near open sides or walls of garage floors or ramps, that act as a restraint for vehicles.

VEHICULAR GATE. A gate that is intended for use at a vehicular entrance or exit to a facility, building or portion thereof, and that is not intended for use by pedestrian traffic.

VEHICULAR OR PEDESTRIAN ARRIVAL POINTS. [HCD 1-AC] *Public or resident parking areas, public transportation stops, passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks.*

VEHICULAR WAY. *A route provided for vehicular traffic, such as in a street, driveway, or parking facility.*

VENEER. A facing attached to a wall for the purpose of providing ornamentation, protection or insulation, but not counted as adding strength to the wall.

[M] **VENTILATION.** The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VINYL SIDING. A shaped material, made principally from rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC), that is used as an exterior wall covering.

[F] **VISIBLE ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE.** A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of sight.

WAITING ROOM. [SFM] *Waiting room is a room or area normally provided with seating and used for persons waiting.*

WALK. [DSA-AC] *An exterior prepared surface for pedestrian use, including pedestrian areas such as plazas and courts. (As differentiated from the definition of "Sidewalk".)*
[HCD 1-AC] *A surfaced pedestrian way not located contiguous to a street used by the public. (See also "Sidewalk".)*

WALKWAY, PEDESTRIAN. A walkway used exclusively as a pedestrian trafficway.

[BS] **WALL (for Chapter 21).** A vertical element with a horizontal length-to-thickness ratio greater than three, used to enclose space.

Cavity wall. A wall built of masonry units or of concrete, or a combination of these materials, arranged to provide an airspace within the wall, and in which the inner and outer parts of the wall are tied together with metal ties.

Dry-stacked, surface-bonded wall. A wall built of concrete masonry units where the units are stacked dry, without mortar on the bed or head joints, and where both sides of the wall are coated with a surface-bonding mortar.

Parapet wall. The part of any wall entirely above the roof line.

[BS] **WALL, LOAD-BEARING.** Any wall meeting either of the following classifications:

1. Any metal or wood stud wall that supports more than 100 pounds per linear foot (1459 N/m) of vertical load in addition to its own weight.
2. Any masonry or concrete wall that supports more than 200 pounds per linear foot (2919 N/m) of vertical load in addition to its own weight.

[BS] **WALL, NONLOAD-BEARING.** Any wall that is not a load-bearing wall.

WATERLINE. *Shall be defined as one of the following:*

1. *Skimmer systems. The waterline shall be the midpoint of the operating range of the skimmers.*
2. *Overflow system. The waterline shall be the top edge of the overflow rim.*

[F] **WATER-REACTIVE MATERIAL.** A material that explodes; violently reacts; produces flammable, toxic or other hazardous gases; or evolves enough heat to cause autoignition or ignition of combustibles upon exposure to water or moisture. Water-reactive materials are subdivided as follows:

Class 3. Materials that react explosively with water without requiring heat or confinement.

Class 2. Materials that react violently with water or have the ability to boil water. Materials that produce flammable, toxic or other hazardous gases or evolve enough heat to

cause autoignition or ignition of combustibles upon exposure to water or moisture.

Class 1. Materials that react with water with some release of energy, but not violently.

WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER. A material behind an exterior wall covering that is intended to resist liquid water that has penetrated behind the exterior covering from further intruding into the exterior wall assembly.

WEATHER-EXPOSED SURFACES. Surfaces of walls, ceilings, floors, roofs, soffits and similar surfaces exposed to the weather except the following:

1. Ceilings and roof soffits enclosed by walls, fascia, bulkheads or beams that extend not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below such ceiling or roof soffits.
2. Walls or portions of walls beneath an unenclosed roof area, where located a horizontal distance from an open exterior opening equal to not less than twice the height of the opening.
3. Ceiling and roof soffits located a minimum horizontal distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the outer edges of the ceiling or roof soffits.

WET BAR. [DSA-AC] *An area or space with a counter equipped with a sink and running water but without cooking facilities.*

[F] WET-CHEMICAL EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM. A solution of water and potassium-carbonate-based chemical, potassium-acetate-based chemical or a combination thereof, forming an extinguishing agent.

WHEELCHAIR. *A chair mounted on wheels to be propelled by its occupant manually or with the aid of electric power, of a size and configuration conforming to the recognized standard models of the trade.*

WHEELCHAIR SPACE. A space for a single wheelchair and its occupant.

WILDFIRE. [SFM] *(See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)*

WILDFIRE EXPOSURE. [SFM] *(See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)*

WILDLAND-URBAN INTERFACE FIRE AREA. [SFM] *(See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)*

WINERY CAVES. *See Section 46.*

[BS] WIND-BORNE DEBRIS REGION. Areas within hurricane-prone regions located:

1. Within 1 mile (1.61 km) of the coastal mean high water line where the ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult} , is 130 mph (58 m/s) or greater; or
2. In areas where the ultimate design wind speed is 140 mph (63.6 m/s) or greater.

For Risk Category II buildings and structures and Risk Category III buildings and structures, except health care facilities, the wind-borne debris region shall be based on Figure 1609.3(1). For Risk Category IV buildings and structures and Risk Category III health care facilities, the wind-borne debris region shall be based on Figure 1609.3(2).

WINDFORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM, MAIN. See “Main Windforce-Resisting System.”

[BS] WIND SPEED, V_{ult} . Ultimate design wind speeds.

[BS] WIND SPEED, V_{asd} . Nominal design wind speeds.

WINDER. A tread with nonparallel edges.

[BS] WIRE BACKING. Horizontal strands of tautened wire attached to surfaces of vertical supports which, when covered with the building paper, provide a backing for cement plaster

[F] WIRELESS PROTECTION SYSTEM. A system or a part of a system that can transmit and receive signals without the aid of wire.

[BS] WOOD/PLASTIC COMPOSITE. A composite material made primarily from wood or cellulose-based materials and plastic.

[BS] WOOD SHEAR PANEL. A wood floor, roof or wall component sheathed to act as a shear wall or diaphragm.

[BS] WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL. A panel manufactured from veneers, wood strands or wafers or a combination of veneer and wood strands or wafers bonded together with waterproof synthetic resins or other suitable bonding systems. Examples of wood structural panels are:

Composite panels. A wood structural panel that is comprised of wood veneer and reconstituted wood-based material and bonded together with waterproof adhesive;

Oriented strand board (OSB). A mat-formed wood structural panel comprised of thin rectangular wood strands arranged in cross-aligned layers with surface layers normally arranged in the long panel direction and bonded with waterproof adhesive; or

Plywood. A wood structural panel comprised of plies of wood veneer arranged in cross-aligned layers. The plies are bonded with waterproof adhesive that cures on application of heat and pressure.

WORK AREA EQUIPMENT. [DSA-AC] *Any machine, instrument, engine, motor, pump, conveyor, or other apparatus used to perform work. As used in this document, this term shall apply only to equipment that is permanently installed or built-in in employee work areas. Work area equipment does not include passenger elevators and other accessible means of vertical transportation.*

[F] WORKSTATION. A defined space or an independent principal piece of equipment using HPM within a fabrication area where a specific function, laboratory procedure or research activity occurs. Approved or listed hazardous materials storage cabinets, flammable liquid storage cabinets or gas cabinets serving a workstation are included as part of the workstation. A workstation is allowed to contain ventilation equipment, fire protection devices, detection devices, electrical devices and other processing and scientific equipment.

[DSA-AC] *An area defined by equipment and/or work surfaces intended for use by employees only, and generally for one or a small number of employees at a time. Examples include ticket booths; the employee side of grocery store check stands; the bartender area behind a bar; the employee side of snack bars, sales counters and public counters;*

DEFINITIONS

guardhouses; toll booths; kiosk vending stands; lifeguard stations; maintenance equipment closets; counter and equipment areas in restaurant kitchens; file rooms; storage areas; etc.

[BS] WYTHER. Each continuous, vertical section of a wall, one masonry unit in thickness.

YARD. An open space, other than a court, unobstructed from the ground to the sky, except where specifically provided by this code, on the lot on which a building is situated.

[F] ZONE. A defined area within the protected premises. A zone can define an area from which a signal can be received, an area to which a signal can be sent or an area in which a form of control can be executed.

[F] ZONE, NOTIFICATION. An area within a building or facility covered by notification appliances which are activated simultaneously.

[F] TABLE 307.1(2)
 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA OF HAZARDOUS MATERIAL POSING A HEALTH HAZARD^{a, c, f, h, i}

MATERIAL	STORAGE ^b			USE-CLOSED SYSTEMS ^b			USE-OPEN SYSTEMS ^b	
	Solid pounds ^{d, e}	Liquid gallons (pounds) ^{d, e}	Gas cubic feet at NTP (pounds) ^d	Solid pounds ^d	Liquid gallons (pounds) ^d	Gas cubic feet at NTP (pounds) ^d	Solid pounds ^d	Liquid gallons (pounds) ^d
Corrosives	5,000	500	Gaseous 810 ^c Liquefied (150)	5,000	500	Gaseous 810 ^c Liquefied (150)	1,000	100
Highly Toxic	10	(10)	Gaseous 20 ^g Liquefied (4) ^g	10	(10)	Gaseous 20 ^g Liquefied (4) ^g	3	(3)
Toxic	500	(500)	Gaseous 810 ^c Liquefied (150) ^e	500	(500)	Gaseous 810 ^c Liquefied (150) ^e	125	(125)

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m³, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

- a. For use of control areas, see Section 414.2.
- b. The aggregate quantity in use and storage shall not exceed the quantity listed for storage.
- c. In retail and wholesale sales occupancies, the quantities of medicines, foodstuffs or consumer products, and cosmetics containing not more than 50 percent by volume of water-miscible liquids and with the remainder of the solutions not being flammable, shall not be limited, provided that such materials are packaged in individual containers not exceeding 1.3 gallons.
- d. [SFM] In other than Group L occupancies, maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent in buildings equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where Note e also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
- e. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent where stored in approved storage cabinets, gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures as specified in the California Fire Code. Where Note d also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
- f. For storage and display quantities in Group M and storage quantities in Group S occupancies complying with Section 414.2.5, see Tables 414.2.5(1) and 414.2.5(2).
- g. Allowed only where stored in approved exhausted gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures as specified in the California Fire Code.
- h. Quantities in parenthesis indicate quantity units in parenthesis at the head of each column.
- i. For gallons of liquids, divide the amount in pounds by 10 in accordance with Section 5003.1.2 of the California Fire Code.

[F] 307.3.1 Occupancies containing explosives not classified as H-1. The following occupancies containing explosive materials shall be classified as follows:

1. Division 1.3 explosive materials that are used and maintained in a form where either confinement or configuration will not elevate the hazard from a mass fire to mass explosion hazard shall be allowed in H-2 occupancies.
2. Articles, including articles packaged for shipment, that are not regulated as a Division 1.4 explosive under Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives regulations, or unpackaged articles used in process operations that do not propagate a detonation or deflagration between articles shall be allowed in H-3 occupancies.

[F] 307.4 High-hazard Group H-2. Buildings and structures containing materials that pose a deflagration hazard or a hazard from accelerated burning shall be classified as Group H-2. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Class I, II or IIIA flammable or combustible liquids that are used or stored in normally open containers or systems, or in closed containers or systems pressurized at more than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103.4 kPa).
- Combustible dusts where manufactured, generated or used in such a manner that the concentration and conditions create a fire or explosion hazard based on information prepared in accordance with Section 414.1.3.
- Cryogenic fluids, flammable.
- Flammable gases.

- Organic peroxides, Class I.
- Oxidizers, Class 3, that are used or stored in normally open containers or systems, or in closed containers or systems pressurized at more than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103 kPa).
- Pyrophoric liquids, solids and gases, nondetonable.
- Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 3, nondetonable.
- Water-reactive materials, Class 3.

[F] 307.5 High-hazard Group H-3. Buildings and structures containing materials that readily support combustion or that pose a physical hazard shall be classified as Group H-3. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Class I, II or IIIA flammable or combustible liquids that are used or stored in normally closed containers or systems pressurized at 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103.4 kPa) or less.
- Combustible fibers, other than densely packed baled cotton, where manufactured, generated or used in such a manner that the concentration and conditions create a fire or explosion hazard based on information prepared in accordance with Section 414.1.3.
- Consumer fireworks, 1.4G (Class C, Common)
- Cryogenic fluids, oxidizing
- Flammable solids
- Organic peroxides, Class II and III
- Oxidizers, Class 2
- Oxidizers, Class 3, that are used or stored in normally closed containers or systems pressurized at 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103 kPa) or less
- Oxidizing gases
- Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 2
- Water-reactive materials, Class 2

USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION

[F] **307.6 High-hazard Group H-4.** Buildings and structures containing materials that are health hazards shall be classified as Group H-4. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Corrosives
- Highly toxic materials
- Toxic materials

[F] **307.7 High-hazard Group H-5.** Semiconductor fabrication facilities and comparable research and development areas in which hazardous production materials (HPM) are used and the aggregate quantity of materials is in excess of those listed in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2) shall be classified as Group H-5. Such facilities and areas shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 415.11.

[F] **307.8 Multiple hazards.** Buildings and structures containing a material or materials representing hazards that are classified in one or more of Groups H-1, H-2, H-3 and H-4 shall conform to the code requirements for each of the occupancies so classified.

SECTION 308 INSTITUTIONAL GROUP I

308.1 Institutional Group I. Institutional Group I occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, in which care or supervision is provided to persons who are or are not capable of self-preservation without physical assistance or in which persons are detained for penal or correctional purposes or in which the liberty of the occupants is restricted. Institutional occupancies shall be classified as Group I-1, I-2, *I-2.1*, I-3 or I-4. *Restraint shall not be permitted in any building except in Group I-3 occupancies constructed for such use, see Section 408.1.2.*

Where occupancies house both ambulatory and nonambulatory persons, the more restrictive requirements shall apply.

308.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

24-HOUR BASIS.

CUSTODIAL CARE.

DETOXIFICATION FACILITIES.

FOSTER CARE FACILITIES.

HOSPITALS AND PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS.

INCAPABLE OF SELF-PRESERVATION.

MEDICAL CARE.

NURSING HOMES.

308.3 Institutional Group I-1. *Not used. (See Group R-2.1 Section 310.1).*

308.4 Institutional Group I-2. Institutional Group I-2 occupancy shall include buildings and structures used for medical care on a 24-hour basis for more than five persons who are incapable of self-preservation *or classified as nonambulatory or bedridden*. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Foster care facilities
- Detoxification facilities

- Hospitals
- Nursing homes
- Psychiatric hospitals

308.4.1 Institutional Group I-2.1 Ambulatory health care facility. *A healthcare facility that receives persons for outpatient medical care that may render the patient incapable of unassisted self-preservation and where each tenant space accommodates more than five such patients.*

308.5 Institutional Group I-3. Institutional Group I-3 occupancy shall include buildings *or portions of buildings* and structures that are inhabited by *one or more* persons who are under restraint or security. A Group I-3 facility is occupied by persons who are generally incapable of self-preservation due to security measures not under the occupants' control, *which includes persons restrained*. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Correctional centers
- Courthouse holding facility*
- Detention centers
- Detention treatment room*
- Jails
- Juvenile Halls*
- Prerelease centers
- Prisons
- Reformatories
- Secure interview rooms*
- Temporary holding facility*

Buildings of Group I-3 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions indicated in Sections 308.5.1 through 308.5.8 (see Section 408.1).

308.5.1 Condition 1. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed from sleeping areas, and other spaces where access or occupancy is permitted, to the exterior via means of egress without restraint. A Condition 1 facility is permitted to be constructed as Group R.

308.5.2 Condition 2. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed from sleeping areas and any other occupied smoke compartment to one or more other smoke compartments. Egress to the exterior is impeded by locked exits.

308.5.3 Condition 3. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed within individual smoke compartments, such as within a residential unit comprised of individual sleeping units and group activity spaces, where egress is impeded by remote-controlled release of means of egress from such a smoke compartment to another smoke compartment.

308.5.4 Condition 4. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is restricted from an occupied space. Remote-controlled release is provided to permit movement from sleeping units, activity spaces and other occupied areas within the smoke compartment to other smoke compartments.

308.5.5 Condition 5. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is restricted from an occupied space. Staff-controlled manual release is

lic district shall adopt or enforce any requirement for the prevention of fire or for the protection of life and property against fire and panic unless the requirement would be applicable to a structure regardless of the special occupancy. Nothing shall restrict the application of state or local housing standards to such facilities if the standards are applicable to residential occupancies and are not based on the use of the structure as a facility for ambulatory children. For the purpose of this exception, ambulatory children does not include relatives of the licensee or the licensee's spouse.

310.5.2 Lodging houses. Owner-occupied lodging houses with five or fewer guest rooms shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with the *California Residential Code*.

310.6 Residential Group R-4. Residential Group R-4 occupancies shall include buildings, structures or portions thereof for more than six ambulatory clients, but not more than 16 persons, excluding staff, who reside on a 24-hour basis in a supervised residential environment and receive custodial care. Buildings of Group R-4 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions specified in Section 310.6.1 or 310.6.2.

> This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

This occupancy classification may include a maximum six nonambulatory or bedridden clients (see Section 435 Special Provisions for Licensed 24-Hour Care Facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 Occupancy). Group R-4 occupancies shall include the following:

*Assisted living facilities such as:
Residential care facilities,
Residential care facilities for the elderly (RCFE),
Adult residential facilities,
Congregate living health facilities,
Group homes.*

*Social rehabilitation facilities such as:
Halfway houses,
Community correctional centers,
Community correction reentry centers,
Community treatment programs,
Work furlough programs,
Alcoholism or drug abuse recovery or treatment facilities.*

Group R-4 occupancies shall meet the requirements for construction as defined for Group R-3, except as otherwise provided for in this code.

310.7 Large family day-care homes. See Section 455.

**SECTION 311
STORAGE GROUP S**

311.1 Storage Group S. Storage Group S occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for storage that is not classified as a hazardous occupancy.

311.1.1 Accessory storage spaces. A room or space used for storage purposes that is less than 100 square feet (9.3

m²) in area and accessory to another occupancy shall be classified as part of that occupancy. The aggregate area of such rooms or spaces shall not exceed the allowable area limits of Section 508.2.

311.2 Moderate-hazard storage, Group S-1. Buildings occupied for storage uses that are not classified as Group S-2, including, but not limited to, storage of the following:

- Aerosols, Levels 2 and 3
- Aircraft hangar (storage and repair)
- Bags: cloth, burlap and paper
- Bamboos and rattan
- Baskets
- Belting: canvas and leather
- Books and paper in rolls or packs
- Boots and shoes
- Buttons, including cloth covered, pearl or bone
- Cardboard and cardboard boxes
- Clothing, woolen wearing apparel
- Cordage
- Dry boat storage (indoor)
- Furniture
- Furs
- Glues, mucilage, pastes and size
- Grains
- Horns and combs, other than celluloid
- Leather
- Linoleum
- Lumber
- Motor vehicle repair garages complying with the maximum allowable quantities of hazardous materials listed in Table 307.1(1) (see Section 406.8)
- Photo engravings
- Resilient flooring
- Silks
- Soaps
- Sugar
- Tires, bulk storage of
- Tobacco, cigars, cigarettes and snuff
- Upholstery and mattresses
- Wax candles

311.3 Low-hazard storage, Group S-2. Storage Group S-2 occupancies include, among others, buildings used for the storage of noncombustible materials such as products on wood pallets or in paper cartons with or without single thickness divisions; or in paper wrappings. Such products are permitted to have a negligible amount of plastic trim, such as knobs, handles or film wrapping. Group S-2 storage uses shall include, but not be limited to, storage of the following:

- Asbestos
- Beverages up to and including 16-percent alcohol in metal, glass or ceramic containers
- Cement in bags
- Chalk and crayons
- Dairy products in nonwaxed coated paper containers
- Dry cell batteries

USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION

Electrical coils
Electrical motors
Empty cans
Food products
Foods in noncombustible containers
Fresh fruits and vegetables in nonplastic trays or containers
Frozen foods
Glass
Glass bottles, empty or filled with noncombustible liquids
Gypsum board
Inert pigments
Ivory
Meats
Metal cabinets
Metal desks with plastic tops and trim
Metal parts
Metals
Mirrors
Oil-filled and other types of distribution transformers
Parking garages, open or enclosed
Porcelain and pottery
Stoves
Talc and soapstones
Washers and dryers

SECTION 312 UTILITY AND MISCELLANEOUS GROUP U

312.1 General. Buildings and structures of an accessory character and miscellaneous structures not classified in any specific occupancy shall be constructed, equipped and maintained to conform to the requirements of this code commensurate with the fire and life hazard incidental to their occupancy. Group U shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Agricultural buildings
Aircraft hangars, accessory to a one- or two-family residence (see Section 412.5)
Barns
Carports
Fences more than 6 feet (1829 mm) in height
Grain silos, accessory to a residential occupancy
Greenhouses
Livestock shelters
Private garages
Retaining walls
Sheds
Stables
Tanks
Towers

SECTION 313 LABORATORIES GROUP L [SFM]

313.1 Laboratories Group L. [SFM] Group L occupancy includes the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, containing one or more laboratory suites as defined in Section 453.

SECTION 314 ORGANIZED CAMPS GROUP C [SFM]

314.1 Organized Camps Group C. [SFM] An organized camp is a site with programs and facilities established for the primary purpose of providing an outdoor group living experience with social, spiritual, educational or recreational objectives, for five days or more during one or more seasons of the year.

not less than the hydraulically calculated sprinkler demand, including the hose stream requirement, shall be provided for high-rise buildings *and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 ft above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access* assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F as determined by Section 1613. An additional fire pump shall not be required for the secondary water supply unless needed to provide the minimum design intake pressure at the suction side of the fire pump supplying the automatic sprinkler system. The secondary water supply shall have a *useable capacity of not less than the hydraulically calculated sprinkler demand plus 100 GPM for the inside hose stream, allowance, for a duration of not less than 30 minutes or as determined by the occupancy hazard classification in accordance with NFPA 13, whichever is greater. The Class 1 standpipe system demand shall not be required to be included in the secondary on-site water supply calculations. In no case shall the secondary on-site water supply be less than 15,000 gallons.*

[F] **403.3.4 Fire pump room.** Fire pumps shall be located in rooms protected in accordance with Section 913.2.1.

403.3.5 Fire pumps. See Section 913.6.

[F] **403.4 Emergency systems.** The detection, alarm and emergency systems of high-rise buildings shall comply with Sections 403.4.1 through 403.4.8.

[F] **403.4.1 Smoke detection.** Smoke detection shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.13.1.

[F] **403.4.2 Fire alarm system.** A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.13.

[F] **403.4.3 Standpipe system.** A high-rise building shall be equipped with a standpipe system as required by Section 905.3.

[F] **403.4.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication system.** An emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

[F] **403.4.5 Emergency responder radio coverage.** Emergency responder radio coverage shall be provided in accordance with Section 510 of the *California Fire Code*.

[F] **403.4.6 Fire command.** A fire command center complying with Section 911 shall be provided in a location approved by the fire department.

|| **403.4.7 Smoke control system.** *All portions of high-rise buildings shall be provided with a smoke control system in accordance with Section 909*

[F] **403.4.8 Standby and emergency power.** A standby power system complying with Section 2702 and Section 3003 shall be provided for the standby power loads specified in Section 403.4.8.3. An emergency power system complying with Section 2702 shall be provided for the emergency power loads specified in Section 403.4.8.4.

[F] **403.4.8.1 Equipment room.** If the standby or emergency power system includes a generator set inside a building, the system shall be located in a separate room enclosed with 2-hour fire barriers con-

structed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. System supervision with manual start and transfer features shall be provided at the fire command center.

Exception: In Group I-2, manual start and transfer features for the critical branch of the emergency power are not required to be provided at the fire command center.

[F] **403.4.8.2 Fuel line piping protection.** Fuel lines supplying a generator set inside a building shall be separated from areas of the building other than the room the generator is located in by an approved method or assembly that has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours. Where the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the required fire-resistance rating shall be reduced to 1 hour.

[F] **403.4.8.3 Standby power loads.** The following are classified as standby power loads:

1. Power and lighting for the fire command center required by Section 403.4.6.
2. Ventilation and automatic fire detection equipment for smokeproof enclosures.
3. Elevators.
4. Where elevators are provided in a high-rise building for accessible means of egress, fire service access or occupant self-evacuation, the standby power system shall also comply with Sections 1009.4, 3007 or 3008, as applicable.

[F] **403.4.8.4 Emergency power loads.** The following are classified as emergency power loads:

1. Exit signs and means of egress illumination required by Chapter 10.
2. Elevator car lighting.
3. Emergency voice/alarm communications systems.
4. Automatic fire detection systems.
5. Fire alarm systems.
6. Electrically powered fire pumps.

403.5 Means of egress and evacuation. The means of egress in high-rise buildings shall comply with Sections 403.5.1 through 403.5.6.

403.5.1 Remoteness of interior exit stairways. Required interior exit stairways shall be separated by a distance not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) or not less than one-fourth of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building or area to be served, whichever is less. The distance shall be measured in a straight line between the nearest points of the enclosure surrounding the interior exit stairways. In buildings with three or more interior exit stairways, no fewer than two of the interior exit stairways shall comply with this section. Interlocking or scissor stairways shall be counted as one interior exit stairway.

403.5.2 Additional interior exit stairway. For buildings other than Group R-2 that are more than 420 feet (128 000

mm) in building height, one additional interior exit stairway meeting the requirements of Sections 1011 and 1023 shall be provided in addition to the minimum number of exits required by Section 1006.3. The total width of any combination of remaining interior exit stairways with one interior exit stairway removed shall be not less than the total width required by Section 1005.1. Scissor stairways shall not be considered the additional interior exit stairway required by this section.

Exception: An additional interior exit stairway shall not be required to be installed in buildings having elevators used for occupant self-evacuation in accordance with Section 3008.

403.5.3 Stairway door operation. Stairway doors other than the exit discharge doors shall be permitted to be locked from the stairway side. Stairway doors that are locked from the stairway side shall be capable of being unlocked simultaneously without unlatching upon a signal from the fire command center. *Upon failure of electrical power to the locking mechanism the door shall unlock.*

403.5.3.1 Stairway communication system. A telephone or other two-way communications system connected to an approved constantly attended station shall be provided at not less than every fifth floor in each stairway where the doors to the stairway are locked.

403.5.4 Smokeproof enclosures. *Every exit enclosure in high-rise buildings shall comply with Sections 909.20 and 1023.11.* Every required interior exit stairway in Group I-2 occupancies serving floors more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access shall be a smokeproof enclosure in accordance with Sections 909.20 and 1023.11.

Exception: *In high-rise buildings, exit enclosures serving three or less adjacent floors where one of the adjacent floors is the level of exit discharge.*

403.5.5 Luminous egress path markings. Luminous egress path markings shall be provided in accordance with Section 1024.

403.5.6 Emergency escape and rescue. Emergency escape and rescue openings required by Section 1029 are not required.

403.6 Elevators. Elevator installation and operation in high-rise buildings shall comply with Chapter 30 and Sections 403.6.1 and 403.6.2.

Enclosed elevator lobbies shall be provided in accordance with Section 3006. Exceptions 2, 3, 4, and 5 of 3006.3 shall only be permitted where approved by the Fire Chief in accordance with Section 1.11.2.1.1 or in accordance with Section 1.11.2.1.2 for all state-owned buildings, state-occupied buildings, and state institutions throughout the state.

403.6.1 Fire service access elevator. In buildings with an occupied floor more than 120 feet (36 576 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, no fewer than two fire service access elevators, or all elevators,

whichever is less, shall be provided in accordance with Section 3007. Each fire service access elevator shall have a capacity of not less than 3,500 pounds (1588 kg) and shall comply with Section 3002.4.

403.6.2 Occupant evacuation elevators. Where installed in accordance with Section 3008, passenger elevators for general public use shall be permitted to be used for occupant self-evacuation.

403.7 Existing high-rise buildings. *For existing high-rise buildings, see California Fire Code Chapter 11 and California Existing Building Code.*

SECTION 404 ATRIUMS

404.1 General. In other than Group H occupancies, and where permitted by Section 712.1.6, the provisions of Sections 404.1 through 404.9 shall apply to buildings or structures containing vertical openings defined as "Atriums."

404.1.1 Definition. The following term is defined in Chapter 2:

ATRIUM.

404.2 Use. The floor of the atrium shall not be used for other than low fire hazard uses and only approved materials and decorations in accordance with the *California Fire Code* shall be used in the atrium space.

Exception: The atrium floor area is permitted to be used for any approved use where the individual space is provided with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

[F] 404.3 Automatic sprinkler protection. An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout the entire building.

Exceptions:

1. That area of a building adjacent to or above the atrium need not be sprinklered provided that portion of the building is separated from the atrium portion by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.
2. Where the ceiling of the atrium is more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above the floor, sprinkler protection at the ceiling of the atrium is not required.

[F] 404.4 Fire alarm system. A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.14.

404.5 Smoke control. A smoke control system shall be installed in accordance with Section 909.

Exception: In other than Group I-2, and R-2.1, smoke control is not required for atriums that connect only two stories.

404.6 Enclosure of atriums. Atrium spaces shall be separated from adjacent spaces by a 1-hour fire barrier con-

structed in accordance with Section 707 or a horizontal assembly constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Exceptions:

1. A fire barrier is not required where a glass wall forming a smoke partition is provided. The glass wall shall comply with all of the following:
 - 1.1. Automatic sprinklers are provided along both sides of the separation wall and doors, or on the room side only if there is not a walkway on the atrium side. The sprinklers shall be located between 4 inches and 12 inches (102 mm and 305 mm) away from the glass and at intervals along the glass not greater than 6 feet (1829 mm). The sprinkler system shall be designed so that the entire surface of the glass is wet upon activation of the sprinkler system without obstruction;
 - 1.2. The glass wall shall be installed in a gasketed frame in a manner that the framing system deflects without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler system operates; and
 - 1.3. Where glass doors are provided in the glass wall, they shall be either self-closing or automatic-closing.
2. A fire barrier is not required where a glass-block wall assembly complying with Section 2110 and having a $3/4$ -hour fire protection rating is provided.
3. *In other than Group I and R-2.1 occupancies*, a fire barrier is not required between the atrium and the adjoining spaces of any three floors of the atrium provided such spaces are accounted for in the design of the smoke control system.

[F] 404.7 Standby power. Equipment required to provide smoke control shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 909.11.

404.8 Interior finish. The interior finish of walls and ceilings of the atrium shall be not less than Class B with no reduction in class for sprinkler protection.

404.9 Exit access travel distance. Exit access travel distance for areas open to an atrium shall comply with the requirements of this section.

404.9.1 Egress not through the atrium. Where required access to the exits is not through the atrium, exit access travel distance shall comply with Section 1017.

404.9.2 Exit access travel distance at the level of exit discharge. Where the path of egress travel is through an atrium space, exit access travel distance at the level of exit discharge shall be determined in accordance with Section 1017.

404.9.3 Exit access travel distance at other than the level of exit discharge. Where the path of egress travel is not at the level of exit discharge from the atrium, that portion of the total permitted exit access travel distance that

occurs within the atrium shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

404.10 Interior exit stairways. A maximum of 50 percent of interior exit stairways are permitted to egress through an atrium on the level of exit discharge in accordance with Section 1028.

404.11 Group I and R-2.1 occupancy means of egress. *Required means of egress from sleeping rooms in Group I and R-2.1 occupancies shall not pass through the atrium.*

SECTION 405 UNDERGROUND BUILDINGS

405.1 General. The provisions of Sections 405.2 through 405.9 apply to building spaces having a floor level used for human occupancy more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest level of exit discharge.

Exception: The provisions of Section 405 are not applicable to the following buildings or portions of buildings:

1. One- and two-family dwellings, sprinklered in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.
2. Parking garages provided with automatic sprinkler systems in compliance with Section 405.3.
3. Fixed guideway transit systems.
4. Grandstands, bleachers, stadiums, arenas and similar facilities.
5. Where the lowest story is the only story that would qualify the building as an underground building and has an area not greater than 1,500 square feet (139 m²) and has an occupant load less than 10.
6. Pumping stations and other similar mechanical spaces intended only for limited periodic use by service or maintenance personnel.

405.2 Construction requirements. The underground portion of the building shall be of Type I construction.

[F] 405.3 Automatic sprinkler system. The highest level of exit discharge serving the underground portions of the building and all levels below shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Water-flow switches and control valves shall be supervised in accordance with Section 903.4.

405.4 Compartmentation. Compartmentation shall be in accordance with Sections 405.4.1 through 405.4.3.

405.4.1 Number of compartments. A building having a floor level more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest level of exit discharge shall be divided into no fewer than two compartments of approximately equal size. Such compartmentation shall extend through the highest level of exit discharge serving the underground portions of the building and all levels below.

Exception: The lowest story need not be compartmented where the area is not greater than 1,500 square feet (139 m²) and has an occupant load of less than 10.

405.4.2 Smoke barrier penetration. The compartments shall be separated from each other by a smoke barrier in accordance with Section 709. Penetrations between the two compartments shall be limited to plumbing and electrical piping and conduit that are firestopped in accordance with Section 714. Doorways shall be protected by fire door assemblies that are automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3 and are installed in accordance with NFPA 105 and Section 716.5.3. Where provided, each compartment shall have an air supply and an exhaust system independent of the other compartments.

405.4.3 Elevators. Where elevators are provided, each compartment shall have direct access to an elevator. Where an elevator serves more than one compartment, an elevator lobby shall be provided and shall be separated from each compartment by a smoke barrier in accordance with Section 709. Doors shall be gasketed, have a drop sill and be automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

405.5 Smoke control system. A smoke control system shall be provided in accordance with Sections 405.5.1 and 405.5.2.

405.5.1 Control system. A smoke control system is required to control the migration of products of combustion in accordance with Section 909 and the provisions of this section. Smoke control shall restrict movement of smoke to the general area of fire origin and maintain means of egress in a usable condition.

405.5.2 Compartment smoke control system. Where compartmentation is required, each compartment shall have an independent smoke control system. The system shall be automatically activated and capable of manual operation in accordance with Sections 907.2.18 and 907.2.19.

[F] 405.6 Fire alarm systems. A fire alarm system shall be provided where required by Sections 907.2.18 and 907.2.19.

405.7 Means of egress. Means of egress shall be in accordance with Sections 405.7.1 and 405.7.2.

405.7.1 Number of exits. Each floor level shall be provided with no fewer than two exits. Where compartmentation is required by Section 405.4, each compartment shall have no fewer than one exit and shall also have no fewer than one exit access doorway into the adjoining compartment.

405.7.2 Smokeproof enclosure. Every required stairway serving floor levels more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the finished floor of its level of exit discharge shall comply with the requirements for a smokeproof enclosure as provided in Section 1023.11.

[F] 405.8 Standby and emergency power. A standby power system complying with Section 2702 shall be provided for the standby power loads specified in Section 405.8.1. An emergency power system complying with Section 2702 shall be provided for the emergency power loads specified in Section 405.8.2.

[F] 405.8.1 Standby power loads. The following loads are classified as standby power loads:

1. Smoke control system.
2. Ventilation and automatic fire detection equipment for smokeproof enclosures.
3. Fire pumps.
4. Elevators, as required in Section 3003.

[F] 405.8.2 Emergency power loads. The following loads are classified as emergency power loads:

1. Emergency voice/alarm communications systems.
2. Fire alarm systems.
3. Automatic fire detection systems.
4. Elevator car lighting.
5. Means of egress and exit sign illumination as required by Chapter 10.

[F] 405.9 Standpipe system. The underground building shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system in accordance with Section 905.

SECTION 406 MOTOR-VEHICLE-RELATED OCCUPANCIES

406.1 General. Motor-vehicle-related occupancies shall comply with Sections 406.1 through 406.8.

406.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

MECHANICAL-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES.

OPEN PARKING GARAGE.

PRIVATE GARAGE.

RAMP-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES.

406.3 Private garages and carports. Private garages and carports shall comply with Sections 406.3.1 through 406.3.6.

406.3.1 Classification. Private garages and carports shall be classified as Group U occupancies. Each private garage shall be not greater than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) in area. Multiple private garages are permitted in a building where each private garage is separated from the other private garages by 1-hour fire barriers in accordance with Section 707, or 1-hour horizontal assemblies in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Exception: The area of a private garage accessory to Group R-3 one- or two-family dwellings shall not be greater than 3,000 square feet in area.

406.3.2 Clear height. In private garages and carports, the clear height in vehicle and pedestrian traffic areas shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm). *(HCD 1-AC) The clear height of vehicle and pedestrian areas required to be accessible shall comply with Chapter 11A.*

an automatic fire sprinkler system is provided throughout the Group I-2 fire area.

2. Care suites containing sleeping rooms shall be permitted to be not greater than 10,000 square feet (929 m²) in area where an automatic fire sprinkler system is provided throughout the Group I-2 fire area and where an automatic smoke detection system is provided throughout the care suite and installed in accordance with Section 907.

407.4.4.5.2 Exit access. Any sleeping room, or any care suite that contains sleeping rooms, of more than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) shall have no fewer than two exit access doors from the care suite located in accordance with Section 1007.

407.4.4.5.3 Travel distance. The travel distance between any point in a care suite containing sleeping rooms and an exit access door from that care suite shall be not greater than 100 feet (30 480 mm).

407.4.4.6 Care suites not containing sleeping rooms.

Areas not containing sleeping rooms, but only treatment areas and the associated rooms, spaces or circulation space, shall be permitted to be grouped into care suites and shall conform to the limitations in Sections 407.4.4.6.1 and 407.4.4.6.2.

407.4.4.6.1 Area. Care suites of rooms, other than sleeping rooms, shall have an area not greater than 10,000 square feet (929 m²).

407.4.4.6.2 Exit access. Any room or care suite, other than sleeping rooms, with an area of more than 2,500 square feet (232 m²) shall have no fewer than two exit access doors from the room or care suite located in accordance with Section 1007.1.

407.5 Smoke barriers. Smoke barriers shall be provided to subdivide every story used by persons receiving care, treatment or sleeping and to divide other stories with an occupant load of 50 or more persons, regardless of occupancy or use, into no fewer than two smoke compartments. Such stories shall be divided into smoke compartments with an area of not more than 22,500 square feet (2092 m²) and the distance of travel from any point in a smoke compartment to a smoke barrier door shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm). The smoke barrier shall be in accordance with Sections 709 and 909.5.

Exceptions:

1. This requirement shall not apply to Group I-2.1 less than 10,000 ft² (929 m²).
2. An area in an adjoining occupancy shall be permitted to serve as a smoke compartment for a Group I-2.1 facility if the following criteria are met:
 - 2.1. The separating wall and both compartments meet the requirements of 407.5.
 - 2.2. The Group I-2.1 is less than 22,500 ft² (2100 m²).
 - 2.3. Access from the Group I-2.1 to the other occupancy is unrestricted.
3. This requirement shall not apply to the following:
 - 3.1. Any story, not containing a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy, that is located above a story containing a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy.

3.2. Areas that do not contain a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy, where such areas are separated from the Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy by a horizontal exit in accordance with Section 1025.2.

3.3. Any story, not containing a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy, that is located more than one story below a story containing a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy.

3.4. Any story housing only mechanical equipment where such story is located below a story containing a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy and is separated from the story above by a horizontal assembly having not less than a 2 hour fire resistance-rating.

407.5.1 Refuge area. Refuge areas shall be provided within each smoke compartment. The size of the refuge area shall accommodate the occupants and care recipients from the adjoining smoke compartment. Where a smoke compartment is adjoined by two or more smoke compartments, the minimum area of the refuge area shall accommodate the largest occupant load of the adjoining compartments. The size of the refuge area shall provide the following:

1. Not less than 30 net square feet (2.8 m²) for each care recipient confined to bed or stretcher.
2. Not less than 6 square feet (0.56 m²) for each ambulatory care recipient not confined to bed or stretcher and for other occupants.

Areas or spaces permitted to be included in the calculation of refuge area are corridors, sleeping areas, treatment rooms, lounge or dining areas and other low-hazard areas.

407.5.2 Independent egress. At least two means of egress shall be provided from each smoke compartment created by smoke barriers. Means of egress may pass through adjacent compartments provided it does not return through the smoke compartment from which means of egress originated.

407.5.3 Horizontal assemblies. Horizontal assemblies supporting smoke barriers required by this section shall be designed to resist the movement of smoke. Elevator lobbies shall be in accordance with Section 3006.2.

[F] 407.6 Automatic sprinkler system. Every facility as specified herein wherein more than six clients or patients are housed or cared for on the premises on a 24-hour per-day-basis shall have installed and maintained in an operable condition in every building or portion thereof where clients or patients are housed, an automatic sprinkler system of a type approved by the state fire marshal. The provisions of this subsection shall apply to every person, firm or corporation establishing, maintaining or operating a hospital, children's home, children's nursery or institution, or a home or institution for the care of aged or persons with dementia or other cognitive impairments, or any institution for persons with mental illness or persons with developmental disabilities and any nursing or convalescent home, and to any state-owned or state-occupied building used for any of the types of facilities specified herein.

Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply to homes or institutions for the 24-hour-per-day care of ambulatory children if all of the following conditions are satisfied:

SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON USE AND OCCUPANCY

1.1. *The buildings or portions thereof in which children are housed are not more than two stories in height and are constructed and maintained in accordance with regulations adopted by the state fire marshal.*

1.2. *The buildings or portions thereof housing more than six such children shall have installed and maintained in an operable condition therein, a fire alarm system of a type approved by the state fire marshal. Such system shall be activated by detectors responding to invisible particles of combustion other than heat, except that detectors used in closets, usable under-floor areas, storage rooms, bathrooms, attached garages, attics, plenums, laundry rooms and rooms of similar use, may be heat-responsive devices.*

1.3. *The building or portions thereof do not house persons with mental illness or children with developmental disabilities.*

2. *This section shall not apply to any one-story building or structure of an institution or home for the care of the aged providing 24-hour-per-day care if such building or structure is used or intended to be used for the housing of no more than six ambulatory aged persons. Such buildings or institutions shall have installed and maintained in an operable condition herein a fire alarm system of a type approved by the state fire marshal. Such system shall be activated by detectors responding to either visible or invisible particles of combustion other than heat, except that detectors used in closets, usable under-floor areas, storage rooms, bathrooms, attached garages, attics, plenums, laundry rooms and rooms of similar use, may be heat-responsive devices.*

3. *This section shall not apply to occupancies or any alterations thereto conforming to the construction provisions of this exception which were under construction or in existence on March 4, 1972. "Under construction" as used in this exception shall mean that actual work had been performed on the construction site and shall not be construed to mean that the hospital, home, nursery, institution, sanitarium or any portion thereof, was or is in the planning stage. The provisions of this exception shall apply to those buildings or structures having bearing walls and structural flame protected in accordance with the provisions of Column Type 1A of Table 601.*

4. *In detention facilities where inmates are not restrained.*

The provisions of this section shall not apply to any facility used to house six or less persons on the premises.

407.6.1 *When a new addition is to be made to an unsprinklered building or structure as permitted by this subsection, such new addition shall be sprinklered as required by this section and shall be separated from the existing building or structures by not less than a two-hour fire-resistive fire barrier.*

When a sprinkler system is added to an existing unsprinklered building or structure, the sprinklered area(s) shall be separated from the remainder of the building by not less than a one-hour fire-resistive fire barrier.

rier. The provisions of this section do not apply to any facility used to house six or less persons on the premises.

[F] 407.7 Fire alarm system. A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.6.

[F] 407.8 Automatic fire detection. Corridors in Group I-2, Condition 1 occupancies and spaces permitted to be open to the corridors by Section 407.2 shall be equipped with an automatic fire detection system.

Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancies shall be equipped with smoke detection as required in Section 407.2.

Exceptions:

1. Corridor smoke detection is not required where sleeping rooms are provided with smoke detectors that comply with UL 268. Such detectors shall provide a visual display on the corridor side of each sleeping room and an audible and visual alarm at the care provider's station attending each unit.
2. Corridor smoke detection is not required where sleeping room doors are equipped with automatic door-closing devices with integral smoke detectors on the unit sides installed in accordance with their listing, provided that the integral detectors perform the required alerting function.

407.9 Secured yards. Grounds are permitted to be fenced and gates therein are permitted to be equipped with locks, provided that safe dispersal areas having 30 net square feet (2.8 m²) for bed and stretcher care recipients and 6 net square feet (0.56 m²) for ambulatory care recipients and other occupants are located between the building and the fence. Such provided safe dispersal areas shall be located not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the building they serve. *Each safe dispersal area shall have a minimum of two exits. The aggregate clear width of exits from a safe dispersal area shall be determined on the basis of not less than one exit unit of 22 inches (559 mm) for each 500 persons to be accommodated, and no exit shall be less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in width. Gates shall not be installed across corridors or passageways leading to such dispersal areas unless they comply with egress requirements. Keys to gate locks shall be provided in accordance with the California Fire Code.*

407.10 Electrical systems. In Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancies, the essential electrical system for electrical components, equipment and systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 27 and NFPA 99.

407.11 Special Hazards.

407.11.1 Storage and handling of flammable, combustible liquids and hazardous materials shall be in accordance with the California Fire Code.

407.11.2 *All exterior openings in a boiler room or room containing central heating equipment, if located below openings in another story, or if less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from other doors or windows of the same building, shall be protected by a fire assembly having a three-fourths-hour fire protection rating.*

407.11.3 Safety padding. *See Sections 308.1 and 408.14.*

407.11.4 Floor surfaces. *Rooms occupied by patients whose personal liberties are restrained shall have non-combustible floor surfaces see Sections 308.1 and 804.4.3.*

**SECTION 408
GROUP I-3**

408.1 General. Occupancies in Group I-3 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 408.1 through 408.11 and other applicable provisions of this code (see Section 308.5).

408.1.1 Definition. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

CELL.

CELL COMPLEX.

CELL TIERS.

CENTRAL CONTROL BUILDING.

COURTROOM DOCK.

COURTHOUSE HOLDING FACILITY.

DAY ROOM.

DETENTION ELEVATOR.

DETENTION TREATMENT ROOM.

DORMITORY.

HOLDING FACILITY.

HOUSING UNIT.

RESTRAINT.

SALLYPORT.

SMALL MANAGEMENT YARD.

SECURE INTERVIEW ROOMS.

TEMPORARY HOLDING CELL, ROOM OR AREA.

TEMPORARY HOLDING FACILITY.

408.1.2 Construction. Group I-3 Occupancies shall be housed in buildings of Type IA or Type IB.

Exception: Such occupancies may be housed in one-story buildings of Type IIA, Type IIIA or Type VA construction provided the floor area does not exceed 5,200 square feet (483 m²) between fire walls of two-hour fire-resistive construction with openings protected by fire assemblies having 1- and 1½-hour fire-protection rating.

408.1.2.1 Nonbearing walls and partitions interior. Nonbearing cell or dormitory walls within cell complexes shall be of noncombustible construction.

408.1.2.2 Intervening spaces. Common rooms and spaces within Group I-3 occupancies can be considered an intervening space in accordance with Section 1014.2, and not considered a corridor, when they meet any of the following:

1. The inmate and/or staff movement within cell complexes, medical housing wings and mental health housing wings of Type I construction.
2. Areas within any temporary holding area of noncombustible construction.
3. Areas within secure mental health treatment facilities of noncombustible construction.

408.1.2.3 Courthouse holding facilities. Group I-3 courthouse holding facilities shall be considered a separate and distinct building from the remaining courthouse

building for the purpose of determining the type of construction where all of the following conditions are met:

1. 2-hour fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 and 2-hour horizontal assemblies in accordance with Section 711 are provided to separate the courthouse holding facility from all other portions of the courthouse building.
2. Any of the structure used to support courthouse holding facilities meets the requirements for the Group I-3 portion of the building.
3. Each courthouse holding facility located above the first story is less than 1,000 square feet in area, and is designed to hold 10 or less in-custody defendants.
4. Courthouse holding facilities located above the first story containing an internal stairway discharging to the main courthouse holding facility at the first story or basement.
5. Additional exits from the courthouse holding facility located above the first story shall be permitted to exit through the courtrooms.
6. The main courthouse holding facility located on the first story or basement has at least one exit directly to the exterior and additional means of egress shall be permitted to pass through a 1-hour corridor or lobby in the courthouse building.

408.1.2.4 Horizontal building separation for combined Group I-3/Group B occupancy. A Group B Administration building one story in height shall be permitted to be located above a Group I-3 (or Group I-3/I-2) housing/treatment building that is one story above grade and shall be classified as a separate and distinct building for the purpose of determining the type of construction, and shall be considered a separate fire area, where all of the following conditions are met:

1. A 3-hour floor-ceiling assembly below the administration building is constructed as a horizontal assembly in accordance with Section 711.
2. Interior shafts for stairs, elevators and mechanical systems complete the 3-hour separation between the Group B and Group I-3 (or Group I-3/I-2).
3. The Group I-3 occupancy (or Group I-3/I-2 occupancies, correctional medical and mental health uses) below is minimum Type I-B construction with 2-hour fire resistive rated exterior walls.
4. No unprotected openings are allowed in lower roofs within 10 feet of unprotected windows in the upper floor.
5. The Group B building above is of noncombustible construction and equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

6. *The Group B occupancy building above has all required means of egress capable of discharging directly to the exterior to a safe dispersal area.*

408.1.2.5 Temporary holding area. *In buildings protected with automatic sprinklers, corridor serving temporary holding rooms shall be one hour fire resistance rated when the temporary holding occupant load is greater than 20.*

408.1.2.6 Temporary holding facilities. *Temporary holding facilities with nine or fewer persons under restraint may be classified as Group B when located in a buildings complying with all of the following conditions:*

1. *The building shall be protected throughout with a monitored automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.*
2. *The building shall protected with a automatic fire alarm system with notification appliances throughout the holding facility in accordance with Section 907.2.*
3. *The building shall be constructed of Type I, IIA, IIIA or VA construction.*

408.1.2.7 Secure interview rooms. *Secure Interview Rooms used for law enforcement shall be permitted to locked, and shall not be classified as Group I-3 occupancies where all of the following conditions are met:*

1. *A monitored automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings and portions thereof including secure interview rooms. The automatic sprinkler system shall comply with Section 903.3.1.1.*
2. *Secure interview rooms shall be located in non-combustible construction.*
3. *Secure interview rooms have glazed or barred openings with direct, continuous observation from law enforcement personnel who have a means to open the secure interview room.*
4. *Not more than 6 occupants in secure interview rooms shall be located in the same fire area.*
5. *An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed within secure interview rooms and mechanical and electrical rooms.*

408.2 Other occupancies. Buildings or portions of buildings in Group I-3 occupancies where security operations necessitate the locking of required means of egress shall be permitted to be classified as a different occupancy. Occupancies classified as other than Group I-3 shall meet the applicable requirements of this code for that occupancy provided provisions are made for the release of occupants at all times.

Means of egress from detention and correctional occupancies that traverse other use areas shall, as a minimum, conform to requirements for detention and correctional occupancies.

Exceptions:

1. It is permissible to exit through a horizontal exit into other contiguous occupancies that do not conform to

detention and correctional occupancy egress provisions but that do comply with requirements set forth in the appropriate occupancy, as long as the occupancy is not a Group H use.

2. *Regardless of the provisions of Section 508, laundry areas and kitchens including associated dining areas, where commercial/institutional equipment is used shall be separated from the remainder of the building by construction capable of resisting the passage of smoke.*
3. *For the purpose of occupancy separation only courtroom docks that are directly accessory to courtrooms need not be separated from a courtroom.*

408.2.1 Correctional medical and mental health uses. *Where a Group I-2 occupancy in accordance with Section 308.4 and a Group I-3 occupancy occur together in building or portions of buildings, the following Subsections of Sections of 407 shall apply: 407.2.1; 407.2.2; 407.2.3; 407.3.1; 407.3.1.1; 407.4; 407.10.*

408.3 Means of egress. Except as modified or as provided for in this section, the means of egress provisions of Chapter 10 shall apply.

408.3.1 Door width. Doors to resident sleeping units shall have a clear width of not less than 28 inches (711 mm).

408.3.1.1 Cell doors shall open outwardly or slide laterally.

408.3.2 Sliding doors. Where doors in a means of egress are of the horizontal-sliding type, the force to slide the door to its fully open position shall be not greater than 50 pounds (220 N) with a perpendicular force against the door of 50 pounds (220 N).

408.3.3 Guard tower doors. A hatch or trap door not less than 16 square feet (610 m²) in area through the floor and having dimensions of not less than 2 feet (610 mm) in any direction shall be permitted to be used as a portion of the means of egress from guard towers.

408.3.4 Spiral stairways. Spiral stairways that conform to the requirements of Section 1009.12 are permitted for access to and between staff locations.

408.3.5 Ship ladders. Ship ladders shall be permitted for egress from control rooms or elevated facility observation rooms in accordance with Section 1009.14.

408.3.6 Exit discharge. Exits are permitted to discharge into a fenced or walled courtyard. Enclosed yards or courts shall be of a size to accommodate all occupants, be located not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the building and have an area of not less than 15 square feet (1.4 m²) per person.

408.3.6 Exit discharge.

408.3.6.1 Exits are permitted to discharge into a fenced or walled courtyard. *Enclosed yards or courts shall be of a size to accommodate all occupants, a minimum of 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the building with a net area of 3 square feet (0.28 m²) per person. A gate shall be*

hydrogen generation and the sounding of a trouble signal in an approved location.

[F] 421.7 Explosion control. Explosion control shall be provided where required by Section 414.5.1.

[F] 421.8 Standby power. Mechanical ventilation and gas detection systems shall be provided with a standby power system in accordance with Section 2702.

SECTION 422 AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES

422.1 General. Occupancies classified as ambulatory care facilities shall comply with the provisions of Sections 422.1 through 422.5 and other applicable provisions of this code. *[For OSHPD 3] For clinics licensed by California Department of Public Health also refer to Section 1226.2.*

422.2 Separation. Ambulatory care facilities where the potential for four or more care recipients are to be incapable of self-preservation at any time, whether rendered incapable by staff or staff accepted responsibility for a care recipient already incapable, shall be separated from adjacent spaces, corridors or tenants with a fire partition installed in accordance with Section 708.

422.3 Smoke compartments. Where the aggregate area of one or more ambulatory care facilities is greater than 10,000 square feet (929 m²) on one story, the story shall be provided with a smoke barrier to subdivide the story into no fewer than two smoke compartments. The area of any one such smoke compartment shall be not greater than 22,500 square feet (2092 m²). The distance of travel from any point in a smoke compartment to a smoke barrier door shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm). The smoke barrier shall be installed in accordance with Section 709 with the exception that smoke barriers shall be continuous from outside wall to an outside wall, a floor to a floor, or from a smoke barrier to a smoke barrier or a combination thereof.

422.3.1 Means of egress. Where ambulatory care facilities require smoke compartmentation in accordance with Section 422.3, the fire safety evacuation plans provided in accordance with Section 1001.4 shall identify the building components necessary to support a defend-in-place emergency response in accordance with Sections 404 and 408 of the *California Fire Code*.

422.3.2 Refuge area. Not less than 30 net square feet (2.8 m²) for each nonambulatory care recipient shall be provided within the aggregate area of corridors, care recipient rooms, treatment rooms, lounge or dining areas and other low-hazard areas within each smoke compartment. Each occupant of an ambulatory care facility shall be provided with access to a refuge area without passing through or utilizing adjacent tenant spaces.

422.3.3 Independent egress. A means of egress shall be provided from each smoke compartment created by smoke barriers without having to return through the smoke compartment from which means of egress originated.

[F] 422.4 Automatic sprinkler systems. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be provided for ambulatory care facilities in accordance with Section 903.2.2.

[F] 422.5 Fire alarm systems. A fire alarm system shall be provided for ambulatory care facilities in accordance with Section 907.2.2.

SECTION 423 STORM SHELTERS

423.1 General. In addition to other applicable requirements in this code, storm shelters shall be constructed in accordance with ICC 500.

423.1.1 Scope. This section applies to the construction of storm shelters constructed as separate detached buildings or constructed as safe rooms within buildings for the purpose of providing safe refuge from storms that produce high winds, such as tornados and hurricanes. Such structures shall be designated to be hurricane shelters, tornado shelters, or combined hurricane and tornado shelters.

423.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

STORM SHELTER.

Community storm shelter.

Residential storm shelter.

423.3 Critical emergency operations. In areas where the shelter design wind speed for tornados in accordance with Figure 304.2(1) of ICC 500 is 250 MPH, 911 call stations, emergency operation centers and fire, rescue, ambulance and police stations shall have a storm shelter constructed in accordance with ICC 500.

Exception: Buildings meeting the requirements for shelter design in ICC 500.

423.4 Group E occupancies. In areas where the shelter design wind speed for tornados is 250 MPH in accordance with Figure 304.2(1) of ICC 500, all Group E occupancies with an aggregate occupant load of 50 or more shall have a storm shelter constructed in accordance with ICC 500. The shelter shall be capable of housing the total occupant load of the Group E occupancy.

Exceptions:

1. Group E day care facilities.
2. Group E occupancies accessory to places of religious worship.
3. Buildings meeting the requirements for shelter design in ICC 500.

SECTION 424 CHILDREN'S PLAY STRUCTURES

424.1 Children's play structures. Children's play structures installed inside all occupancies covered by this code that exceed 10 feet (3048 mm) in height and 150 square feet (14 m²) in area shall comply with Sections 424.2 through 424.5.

424.2 Materials. Children’s play structures shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or of combustible materials that comply with the following:

1. Fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2.
2. Light-transmitting plastics complying with Section 2606.
3. Foam plastics (including the pipe foam used in soft-contained play equipment structures) having a maximum heat-release rate not greater than 100 kilowatts when tested in accordance with UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289, using the 20 kW ignition source.
4. Aluminum composite material (ACM) meeting the requirements of Class A interior finish in accordance with Chapter 8 when tested as an assembly in the maximum thickness intended for use.
5. Textiles and films complying with the fire propagation performance criteria contained in Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.
6. Plastic materials used to construct rigid components of soft-contained play equipment structures (such as tubes, windows, panels, junction boxes, pipes, slides and decks) exhibiting a peak rate of heat release not exceeding 400 kW/ m² when tested in accordance with ASTM E1354 at an incident heat flux of 50 kW/m² in the horizontal orientation at a thickness of 6 mm.
7. Ball pool balls, used in soft-contained play equipment structures, having a maximum heat-release rate not greater than 100 kilowatts when tested in accordance with UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289, using the 20 kW ignition source. The minimum specimen test size shall be 36 inches by 36 inches (914 mm by 914 mm) by an average of 21 inches (533 mm) deep, and the balls shall be held in a box constructed of galvanized steel poultry netting wire mesh.
8. Foam plastics shall be covered by a fabric, coating or film meeting the fire propagation performance criteria contained in Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.
9. The floor covering placed under the children’s play structure shall exhibit a Class I interior floor finish classification, as described in Section 804, when tested in accordance with NFPA 253.

[F] 424.3 Fire protection. Children’s play structures shall be provided with the same level of approved fire suppression and detection devices required for other structures in the same occupancy.

424.4 Separation. Children’s play structures shall have a horizontal separation from building walls, partitions and from elements of the means of egress of not less than 5 feet (1524 mm). Children’s playground structures shall have a horizontal separation from other children’s play structures of not less than 20 feet (6090 mm).

424.5 Area limits. Children’s play structures shall be not greater than 300 square feet (28 m²) in area, unless a special

investigation, acceptable to the building official, has demonstrated adequate fire safety.

SECTION 425 HYPERBARIC FACILITIES

425.1 Hyperbaric facilities. Hyperbaric facilities shall meet the requirements contained in Chapter 14 of NFPA 99.

SECTION [F] 426 COMBUSTIBLE DUSTS, GRAIN PROCESSING AND STORAGE

426.1 Combustible dusts, grain processing and storage. The provisions of Sections 426.1.1 through 426.1.7 shall apply to buildings in which materials that produce combustible dusts are stored or handled. Buildings that store or handle combustible dusts shall comply with the applicable provisions of NFPA 61, NFPA 85, NFPA 120, NFPA 484, NFPA 654, NFPA 655 and NFPA 664 and the *California Fire Code*.

[F] 426.1.1 Type of construction and height exceptions. Buildings shall be constructed in compliance with the height, number of stories and area limitations specified in Sections 504 and 506; except that where erected of Type I or II construction, the heights and areas of grain elevators and similar structures shall be unlimited, and where of Type IV construction, the maximum building height shall be 65 feet (19 812 mm) and except further that, in isolated areas, the maximum building height of Type IV structures shall be increased to 85 feet (25 908 mm).

[F] 426.1.2 Grinding rooms. Every room or space occupied for grinding or other operations that produce combustible dusts in such a manner that the room or space is classified as a Group H-2 occupancy shall be enclosed with fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating of the enclosure shall be not less than 2 hours where the area is not more than 3,000 square feet (279 m²), and not less than 4 hours where the area is greater than 3,000 square feet (279 m²).

[F] 426.1.3 Conveyors. Conveyors, chutes, piping and similar equipment passing through the enclosures of rooms or spaces shall be constructed dirt tight and vapor tight, and be of approved noncombustible materials complying with Chapter 30.

[F] 426.1.4 Explosion control. Explosion control shall be provided as specified in the *California Fire Code*, or spaces shall be equipped with the equivalent mechanical ventilation complying with the *California Mechanical Code*.

[F] 426.1.5 Grain elevators. Grain elevators, malt houses and buildings for similar occupancies shall not be located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of interior lot lines or structures on the same lot, except where erected along a railroad right-of-way.

505.2.2 Means of egress. The means of egress for mezzanines shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 10.

505.2.3 Openness. A mezzanine shall be open and unobstructed to the room in which such mezzanine is located except for walls not more than 42 inches (1067 mm) in height, columns and posts.

Exceptions:

1. Mezzanines or portions thereof are not required to be open to the room in which the mezzanines are located, provided that the occupant load of the aggregate area of the enclosed space is not greater than 10.
2. A mezzanine having two or more exits or access to exits is not required to be open to the room in which the mezzanine is located.
3. Mezzanines or portions thereof are not required to be open to the room in which the mezzanines are located, provided that the aggregate floor area of the enclosed space is not greater than 10 percent of the mezzanine area.
4. In industrial facilities, mezzanines used for control equipment are permitted to be glazed on all sides.
5. In occupancies other than Groups H and I, that are no more than two stories above grade plane and equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, a mezzanine having two or more means of egress shall not be required to be open to the room in which the mezzanine is located.

505.3 Equipment platforms. Equipment platforms in buildings shall not be considered as a portion of the floor below. Such equipment platforms shall not contribute to either the building area or the number of stories as regulated by Section 503.1. The area of the equipment platform shall not be included in determining the fire area in accordance with Section 903. Equipment platforms shall not be a part of any mezzanine and such platforms and the walkways, stairways, alternating tread devices and ladders providing access to an equipment platform shall not serve as a part of the means of egress from the building.

505.3.1 Area limitation. The aggregate area of all equipment platforms within a room shall be not greater than two-thirds of the area of the room in which they are located. Where an equipment platform is located in the same room as a mezzanine, the area of the mezzanine shall be determined by Section 505.2.1 and the combined aggregate area of the equipment platforms and mezzanines shall be not greater than two-thirds of the room in which they are located.

505.3.2 Automatic sprinkler system. Where located in a building that is required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system, equipment platforms shall be fully pro-

ected by sprinklers above and below the platform, where required by the standards referenced in Section 903.3.

505.3.3 Guards. Equipment platforms shall have guards where required by Section 1015.2.

**SECTION 506
BUILDING AREA**

506.1 General. The floor area of a building shall be determined based on the type of construction, occupancy classification, whether there is an automatic sprinkler system installed throughout the building and the amount of building frontage on public way or open space.

506.1.1 Unlimited area buildings. Unlimited area buildings shall be designed in accordance with Section 507.

506.1.2 Special provisions. The special provisions of Section 510 permit the use of special conditions that are exempt from, or modify, the specific requirements of this chapter regarding the allowable areas of buildings based on the occupancy classification and type of construction, provided the special condition complies with the provisions specified in Section 510.

506.1.3 Basements. Basements need not be included in the total allowable floor area of a building provided the total area of such basements does not exceed the area permitted for a one-story above grade plane building.

506.2 Allowable area determination. The allowable area of a building shall be determined in accordance with the applicable provisions of Sections 506.2.1 through 506.2.4 and Section 506.3.

506.2.1 Single-occupancy, one-story buildings. The allowable area of a single-occupancy building with no more than one story above grade plane shall be determined in accordance with Equation 5-1:

$$A_a = A_t + (NS \times I_p) \tag{Equation 5-1}$$

where:

A_a = Allowable area (square feet).

A_t = Tabular allowable area factor (NS, S1, or S13R value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2.

NS = Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 for nonsprinklered building (regardless of whether the building is sprinklered).

I_p = Area factor increase due to frontage (percent) as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3.

506.2.2 Mixed-occupancy, one-story buildings. The allowable area of a mixed-occupancy building with no more than one story above grade plane shall be determined in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 508.1 based on Equation 5-1 for each applicable occupancy.

GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

TABLE 506.2^{a, b, i}
ALLOWABLE AREA FACTOR (A, = NS, S1, S13R, or SM, as applicable) IN SQUARE FEET

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	SEE FOOTNOTES	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION								
		TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV	TYPE V	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	HT	A	B
A-1	NS	UL	UL	15,500	8,500	14,000	8,500	15,000	11,500	5,500
	S1	UL	UL	62,000	34,000	56,000	34,000	60,000	46,000	22,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	46,500	25,500	42,000	25,500	45,000	34,500	16,500
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	15,500	8,500	14,000	8,500	15,000	11,500	5,500
A-2	NS	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	15,000	11,500	6,000
	S1	UL	UL	62,000	38,000	56,000	38,000	60,000	46,000	24,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	46,500	28,500	42,000	28,500	45,000	34,500	18,000
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	15,000	11,500	6,000
A-3	NS	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	15,000	11,500	6,000
	S1	UL	UL	62,000	38,000	56,000	38,000	60,000	46,000	24,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	46,500	28,500	42,000	28,500	45,000	34,500	18,000
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	15,000	11,500	6,000
A-4	NS	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	15,000	11,500	6,000
	S1	UL	UL	62,000	38,000	56,000	38,000	60,000	46,000	24,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	46,500	28,500	42,000	28,500	45,000	34,500	18,000
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	15,000	11,500	6,000
A-5	NS	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL
	S1									
	SM									
B	NS	UL	UL	37,500	23,000	28,500	19,000	36,000	18,000	9,000
	S1	UL	UL	150,000	92,000	114,000	76,000	144,000	72,000	36,000
	SM	UL	UL	112,500	69,000	85,500	57,000	108,000	54,000	27,000
E	NS	UL	UL	26,500	14,500	23,500	14,500	25,500	18,500	9,500
	S1	UL	UL	106,000	58,000	94,000	58,000	102,000	74,000	38,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	79,500	43,500	70,500	43,500	76,500	55,500	28,500
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	26,500	14,500	23,500	14,500	25,500	18,500	9,500
F-1	NS	UL	UL	25,000	15,500	19,000	12,000	33,500	14,000	8,500
	S1	UL	UL	100,000	62,000	76,000	48,000	134,000	56,000	34,000
	SM	UL	UL	75,000	46,500	57,000	36,000	100,500	42,000	25,500
F-2	NS	UL	UL	37,500	23,000	28,500	18,000	50,500	21,000	13,000
	S1	UL	UL	150,000	92,000	114,000	72,000	202,000	84,000	52,000
	SM	UL	UL	112,500	69,000	85,500	54,000	151,500	63,000	39,000
H-1	NS ^c	21,000	16,500	11,000	7,000	9,500	7,000	10,500	7,500	NP
	S1									
H-2	NS ^c	21,000	16,500	11,000	7,000	9,500	7,000	10,500	7,500	3,000
	S1									
	SM									

(continued)

TABLE 506.2^{a, b, f}—continued
ALLOWABLE AREA FACTOR (A_i = NS, S1, S13R, or SM, as applicable) IN SQUARE FEET

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	SEE FOOTNOTES	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION								
		TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV	TYPE V	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	HT	A	B
H-3	NS ^c	UL	60,000	26,500	14,000	17,500	13,000	25,500	10,000	5,000
	S1									
	SM									
H-4	NS ^{c, d}	UL	UL	37,500	17,500	28,500	17,500	36,000	18,000	6,500
	S1	UL	UL	150,000	70,000	114,000	70,000	144,000	72,000	26,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	112,500	52,500	85,500	52,500	108,000	54,000	19,500
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	37,500	17,500	28,500	17,500	36,000	18,000	6,500
H-5	NS ^{c, d}	UL	UL	37,500	23,000	28,500	19,000	36,000	18,000	9,000
	S1	UL	UL	150,000	92,000	114,000	76,000	144,000	72,000	36,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	112,500	69,000	85,500	57,000	108,000	54,000	27,000
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	37,500	23,000	28,500	19,000	36,000	18,000	9,000
I-2/I-2.1	NS ^{d, f}	UL	UL	15,000	11,000	12,000	NP	12,000	9,500	NP
	S1	UL	UL	60,000	44,000	48,000	NP	48,000	38,000	NP
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	45,000	33,000	36,000	NP	36,000	28,500	NP
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	15,000	11,000	12,000	NP	12,000	9,500	NP
I-3	NS ^{d, e}	UL	15,100	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
	S1	UL	45,300	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
	SM (without height increase)	UL	30,200	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
	SM (with height increase)	UL	15,100	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
I-4	NS ^{d, g}	UL	60,500	26,500	13,000	23,500	13,000	25,500	18,500	9,000
	S1	UL	121,000	106,000	52,000	94,000	52,000	102,000	74,000	36,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	181,500	79,500	39,000	70,500	39,000	76,500	55,500	27,000
	SM (with height increase)	UL	60,500	26,500	13,000	23,500	13,000	25,500	18,500	9,000
L	NS	UL	60,000	37,500	17,500	28,500	17,500	36,000	18,000	6,500
	S1									
	SM									
M	NS	UL	UL	21,500	12,500	18,500	12,500	20,500	14,000	9,000
	S1	UL	UL	86,000	50,000	74,000	50,000	82,000	56,000	36,000
	SM	UL	UL	64,500	37,500	55,500	37,500	61,500	42,000	27,000
R-1 ^h	NS ^d	UL	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	20,500	12,000	7,000
	S13R									
	S1	UL	UL	96,000	64,000	96,000	64,000	82,000	48,000	28,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	72,000	48,000	72,000	48,000	61,500	36,000	21,000
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	20,500	12,000	7,000
R-2 ^h	NS ^d	UL	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	20,500	12,000	7,000
	S13R									
	S1	UL	UL	96,000	64,000	96,000	64,000	82,000	48,000	28,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	72,000	48,000	72,000	48,000	61,500	36,000	21,000
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	20,500	12,000	7,000

(continued)

GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

TABLE 506.2^{a, b, i}—continued
 ALLOWABLE AREA FACTOR (A, = NS, S1, S13R, or SM, as applicable) IN SQUARE FEET

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	SEE FOOTNOTES	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION								
		TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV	TYPE V	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	HT	A	B
R-2 Type VA construction ^h	NS ^d	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	12,000	NP
	S13R	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	12,000	NP
	S1	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	48,000	NP
	SM (without height increase)	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	36,000	NP
	SM (with height increase)	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	36,000 ^j	NP
R-2.1 ^h	NS ^d	UL	55,000	19,000	NP	16,500	NP	NP	16,500	NP
	S13R	UL	55,000	19,000	NP	16,500	NP	NP	16,500	NP
	S1	UL	220,000	76,000	40,000	66,000	40,000	72,000	42,000	NP
	SM (without height increase)	UL	165,000	57,000	30,000	49,500	30,000	54,000	31,500	NP
	SM (with height increase)	UL	55,000	19,000	NP	16,500	NP	NP	16,500	NP
R-3/R-3.1 ^h	NS ^d	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL
	S13D									
	S13R									
	S1									
	SM									
R-4 ^h	NS ^d	UL	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	20,500	12,000	7,000
	S13R									
	S1	UL	UL	96,000	64,000	96,000	64,000	82,000	48,000	28,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	72,000	48,000	72,000	48,000	61,500	36,000	21,000
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	20,500	12,000	7,000
S-1	NS	UL	48,000	26,000	17,500	26,000	17,500	25,500	14,000	9,000
	S1	UL	192,000	104,000	70,000	104,000	70,000	102,000	56,000	36,000
	SM	UL	144,000	78,000	52,500	78,000	52,500	76,500	42,000	27,000
S-2	NS	UL	79,000	39,000	26,000	39,000	26,000	38,500	21,000	13,500
	S1	UL	316,000	156,000	104,000	156,000	104,000	154,000	84,000	54,000
	SM	UL	237,000	117,000	78,000	117,000	78,000	115,500	63,000	40,500
U	NS	UL	35,500	19,000	8,500	14,000	8,500	18,000	9,000	5,500
	S1	UL	142,000	76,000	34,000	56,000	34,000	72,000	36,000	22,000
	SM	UL	106,500	57,000	25,500	42,000	25,500	54,000	27,000	16,500

Note: UL = Unlimited; NP = Not permitted;

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; S1 = Buildings a maximum of one story above grade plane equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; SM = Buildings two or more stories above grade plane equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; S13R = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2; S13D = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.

- a. See Chapters 4 and 5 for specific exceptions to the allowable height in this chapter.
- b. See Section 903.2 for the minimum thresholds for protection by an automatic sprinkler system for specific occupancies.
- c. New Group H occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
- d. The NS value is only for use in evaluation of existing building area in accordance with the *California Existing Building Code*.
- e. New Group I-3 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6.
- f. New and existing Group I-2 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6 and Section 1103.5 of the *California Fire Code*.
- g. New Group I-4 occupancies see Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 903.2.6.
- h. New Group R occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8.
- i. In other than Group A, E, H, I, L, and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, the S increases for height and stories in Tables 504.3 and 504.4 are permitted in addition to the S area increase in accordance with Table 506.2.
- j. For Group R-2 buildings of Type VA construction equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, S area increase is permitted in addition to the height and story increase provided the height shall not exceed 60 feet and 4 stories.

506.2.2.1 Group H-2 or H-3 mixed occupancies. For a building containing Group H-2 or H-3 occupancies, the allowable area shall be determined in accordance with Section 508.4.2, with the sprinkler system increase applicable only to the portions of the building not classified as Group H-2 or H-3.

506.2.3 Single-occupancy, multistory buildings. The allowable area of a single-occupancy building with more than one story above grade plane shall be determined in accordance with Equation 5-2:

$$A_a = [A_t + (NS \times I_f)] \times S_a \quad \text{(Equation 5-2)}$$

where:

A_a = Allowable area (square feet).

A_t = Tabular allowable area factor (NS, S13R or SM value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2.

NS = Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 for a nonsprinklered building (regardless of whether the building is sprinklered).

I_f = Area factor increase due to frontage (percent) as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3.

S_a = For other than Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, actual number of building stories above grade plane, not to exceed three. For Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, actual number of building stories above grade plane, not to exceed two.

No individual story shall exceed the allowable area (A_a) as determined by Equation 5-2 using the value of $S_a = 1$.

506.2.4 Mixed-occupancy, multistory buildings. Each story of a mixed-occupancy building with more than one story above grade plane shall individually comply with the applicable requirements of Section 508.1. For buildings with three or more stories above grade plane, the total building area shall be such that the aggregate sum of the ratios of the actual area of each story divided by the allowable area of such stories, determined in accordance with Equation 5-3 based on the applicable provisions of Section 508.1, shall not exceed three, *provided the aggregate sum of the ratios for portions of mixed-occupancy, multistory buildings containing A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, including any other associated non-separated occupancies, shall not exceed two.*

$$A_a = [A_t + (NS \times I_f)] \quad \text{(Equation 5-3)}$$

where:

A_a = Allowable area (square feet).

A_t = Tabular allowable area factor (NS, S13R or SM value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2.

NS = Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 for a nonsprinklered building (regardless of whether the building is sprinklered).

I_f = Area factor increase due to frontage (percent) as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3.

506.2.4.1 Group H-2 or H-3 mixed occupancies. For a building containing Group H-2 or H-3 occupancies, the allowable area shall be determined in accordance with Section 508.4.2, with the sprinkler system increase applicable only to the portions of the building not classified as Group H-2 or H-3.

506.3 Frontage increase. Every building shall adjoin or have access to a public way to receive an area factor increase based on frontage. Area factor increase shall be determined in accordance with Sections 506.3.1 through 506.3.3.

506.3.1 Minimum percentage of perimeter. To qualify for an area factor increase based on frontage, a building shall have not less than 25 percent of its perimeter on a public way or open space. Such open space shall be either on the same lot or dedicated for public use and shall be accessed from a street or approved fire lane.

506.3.2 Minimum frontage distance. To qualify for an area factor increase based on frontage, the public way or open space adjacent to the building perimeter shall have a minimum distance (W) of 20 feet (6096 mm) measured at right angles from the building face to any of the following:

1. The closest interior lot line.
2. The entire width of a street, alley or public way.
3. The exterior face of an adjacent building on the same property.

Where the value of W is greater than 30 feet (9144 mm), a value of 30 feet (9144 mm) shall be used in calculating the building area increase based on frontage, regardless of the actual width of the public way or open space. Where the value of W varies along the perimeter of the building, the calculation performed in accordance with Equation 5-5 shall be based on the weighted average calculated in accordance with Equation 5-4.

$$W = (L_1 \times w_1 + L_2 \times w_2 + L_3 \times w_3 \dots) / F \quad \text{(Equation 5-4)}$$

where:

W (Width: weighted average) = Calculated width of public way or open space (feet).

L_n = Length of a portion of the exterior perimeter wall.

w_n = Width (≥ 20 feet) of a public way or open space associated with that portion of the exterior perimeter wall.

F = Building perimeter that fronts on a public way or open space having a width of 20 feet (6096 mm) or more.

Exception: Where a building meets the requirements of Section 507, as applicable, except for compliance with the minimum 60-foot (18 288 mm) public way or yard requirement, and the value of W is greater than 30

feet (9144 mm), the value of *W* shall not exceed 60 feet (18 288 mm).

506.3.3 Amount of increase. The area factor increase based on frontage shall be determined in accordance with Equation 5-5:

$$I_f = [F/P - 0.25]W/30 \quad \text{(Equation 5-5)}$$

where:

I_f = Area factor increase due to frontage.

F = Building perimeter that fronts on a public way or open space having minimum distance of 20 feet (6096 mm).

P = Perimeter of entire building (feet).

W = Width of public way or open space (feet) in accordance with Section 506.3.2.

SECTION 507 UNLIMITED AREA BUILDINGS

507.1 General. The area of buildings of the occupancies and configurations specified in Sections 507.1 through 507.12 shall not be limited. Basements not more than one story below grade plane shall be permitted.

507.1.1 Accessory occupancies. Accessory occupancies shall be permitted in unlimited area buildings in accordance with the provisions of Section 508.2, otherwise the requirements of Sections 507.3 through 507.13 shall be applied, where applicable.

507.2 Measurement of open spaces. Where Sections 507.3 through 507.13 require buildings to be surrounded and adjoined by public ways and yards, those open spaces shall be determined as follows:

1. Yards shall be measured from the building perimeter in all directions to the closest interior lot lines or to the exterior face of an opposing building located on the same lot, as applicable.
2. Where the building fronts on a public way, the entire width of the public way shall be used.

507.2.1 Reduced open space. The public ways or yards of 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width required in Sections 507.3, 507.4, 507.5, 507.6 and 507.12 shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in width provided all of the following requirements are met:

1. The reduced width shall not be allowed for more than 75 percent of the perimeter of the building.
2. The exterior walls facing the reduced width shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 3 hours.
3. Openings in the exterior walls facing the reduced width shall have opening protectives with a fire protection rating of not less than 3 hours.

507.3 Nonsprinklered, one-story buildings. The area of a Group F-2 or S-2 building no more than one story in height shall not be limited where the building is surrounded and

adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.4 Sprinklered, one-story buildings. The area of a Group B, F, M or S building no more than one story above grade plane of any construction type, shall not be limited where the building is provided with an automatic sprinkler system throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

Exception: Buildings and structures of Type I or II construction for rack storage facilities that do not have access by the public shall not be limited in height, provided that such buildings conform to the requirements of Sections 507.4 and 903.3.1.1 and Chapter 32 of the *California Fire Code*.

507.4.1 Mixed occupancy buildings with Groups A-1 and A-2. Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies of other than Type V construction shall be permitted within mixed occupancy buildings of unlimited area complying with Section 507.4, provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies are separated from other occupancies as required for separated occupancies in Section 508.4.4 with no reduction allowed in the fire-resistance rating of the separation based upon the installation of an automatic sprinkler system.
2. Each area of the portions of the building used for Group A-1 or A-2 occupancies shall not exceed the maximum allowable area permitted for such occupancies in Section 503.1.
3. Exit doors from Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies shall discharge directly to the exterior of the building.

507.5 Two-story buildings. The area of a Group B, F, M or S building no more than two stories above grade plane shall not be limited where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.6 Group A-3 buildings of Type II construction. The area of a Group A-3 building no more than one story above grade plane, used as a place of religious worship, community hall, dance hall, exhibition hall, gymnasium, lecture hall, indoor swimming pool or tennis court of Type II construction, shall not be limited provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. The building shall not have a stage other than a platform.
2. The building shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. The building shall be surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.7 Group A-3 buildings of Type III and IV construction. The area of a Group A-3 building of Type III or IV construction, with no more than one story above grade plane and used as a place of religious worship, community hall, dance hall, exhibition hall, gymnasium, lecture hall, indoor swimming pool or tennis court, shall not be limited provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. The building shall not have a stage other than a platform.
2. The building shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. The assembly floor shall be located at or within 21 inches (533 mm) of street or grade level and all exits are provided with ramps complying with Section 1012 to the street or grade level.
4. The building shall be surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.8 Group H-2, H-3 and H-4 occupancies. Group H-2, H-3 and H-4 occupancies shall be permitted in unlimited area buildings containing Group F or S occupancies in accordance with Sections 507.4 and 507.5 and the provisions of Sections 507.8.1 through 507.8.4.

507.8.1 Allowable area. The aggregate floor area of Group H occupancies located in an unlimited area building shall not exceed 10 percent of the area of the building or the area limitations for the Group H occupancies as specified in Section 506 based on the perimeter of each Group H floor area that fronts on a public way or open space.

507.8.1.1 Located within the building. The aggregate floor area of Group H occupancies not located at the perimeter of the building shall not exceed 25 percent of the area limitations for the Group H occupancies as specified in Section 506.

507.8.1.1.1 Liquid use, dispensing and mixing rooms. Liquid use, dispensing and mixing rooms having a floor area of not more than 500 square feet (46.5 m²) need not be located on the outer perimeter of the building where they are in accordance with the *California Fire Code* and NFPA 30.

507.8.1.1.2 Liquid storage rooms. Liquid storage rooms having a floor area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) need not be located on the outer perimeter where they are in accordance with the *California Fire Code* and NFPA 30.

507.8.1.1.3 Spray paint booths. Spray paint booths that comply with the *California Fire Code* need not be located on the outer perimeter.

507.8.2 Located on building perimeter. Except as provided for in Section 507.8.1.1, Group H occupancies shall be located on the perimeter of the building. In Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies, not less than 25 percent of the perimeter of such occupancies shall be an exterior wall.

507.8.3 Occupancy separations. Group H occupancies shall be separated from the remainder of the unlimited area building and from each other in accordance with Table 508.4.

507.8.4 Height limitations. For two-story, unlimited area buildings, Group H occupancies shall not be located more than one story above grade plane unless permitted based on the allowable height and number of stories and feet as specified in Section 504 based on the type of construction of the unlimited area building.

507.9 Unlimited mixed occupancy buildings with Group H-5. The area of a Group B, F, H-5, M or S building no more than two stories above grade plane shall not be limited where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width, provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. Buildings containing Group H-5 occupancy shall be of Type I or II construction.
2. Each area used for Group H-5 occupancy shall be separated from other occupancies as required in Sections 415.11 and 508.4.
3. Each area used for Group H-5 occupancy shall not exceed the maximum allowable area permitted for such occupancies in Section 503.1 including modifications of Section 506.

Exception: Where the Group H-5 occupancy exceeds the maximum allowable area, the Group H-5 shall be subdivided into areas that are separated by 2-hour fire barriers.

507.10 Aircraft paint hangar. The area of a Group H-2 aircraft paint hangar no more than one story above grade plane shall not be limited where such aircraft paint hangar complies with the provisions of Section 412.6 and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less in width than one and one-half times the building height.

507.11 Group E buildings. The area of a Group E building no more than one story above grade plane, of Type IIA, IIIA or IV construction, shall not be limited provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. Each classroom shall have not less than two means of egress, with one of the means of egress being a direct exit to the outside of the building complying with Section 1022.
2. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. The building is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.12 Motion picture theaters. In buildings of Type II construction, the area of a motion picture theater located on the first story above grade plane shall not be limited where the building is provided with an automatic sprinkler system

throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.13 Covered and open mall buildings and anchor buildings. The area of covered and open mall buildings and anchor buildings not exceeding three stories in height that comply with Section 402 shall not be limited.

SECTION 508 MIXED USE AND OCCUPANCY

508.1 General. Each portion of a building shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. Where a building contains more than one occupancy group, the building or portion thereof shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 508.2, 508.3 or 508.4, or a combination of these sections.

Exceptions:

1. Occupancies separated in accordance with Section 510.
2. Where required by Table 415.5.2, areas of Group H-1, H-2 and H-3 occupancies shall be located in a detached building or structure.
3. Uses within live/work units, complying with Section 419, are not considered separate occupancies.

508.2 Accessory occupancies. Accessory occupancies are those occupancies that are ancillary to the main occupancy of the building or portion thereof. Accessory occupancies shall comply with the provisions of Sections 508.2.1 through 508.2.4.

508.2.1 Occupancy classification. Accessory occupancies shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. The requirements of this code shall apply to each portion of the building based on the occupancy classification of that space.

508.2.2 Allowable building height. The allowable height and number of stories of the building containing accessory occupancies shall be in accordance with Section 504 for the main occupancy of the building.

508.2.3 Allowable building area. The allowable area of the building shall be based on the applicable provisions of Section 506 for the main occupancy of the building. Aggregate accessory occupancies shall not occupy more than 10 percent of the floor area of the story in which they are located and shall not exceed the tabular values for non-sprinklered buildings in Table 506.2 for each such accessory occupancy.

508.2.4 Separation of occupancies. No separation is required between accessory occupancies and the main occupancy.

Exceptions:

1. Group H-2, H-3, H-4, H-5 *and L* occupancies shall be separated from all other occupancies in accordance with Section 508.4.

2. Group I-1, R-1, R-2, *R-2.1* and R-3 dwelling units and sleeping units shall be separated from other dwelling or sleeping units and from accessory occupancies contiguous to them in accordance with the requirements of Section 420.

3. *No separation is required between Group B, E, R-2 sleeping units and S-2 occupancies accessory to Group I-2, I-2.1 and I-3 of Type I Construction.*

508.3 Nonseparated occupancies. Buildings or portions of buildings that comply with the provisions of this section shall be considered as nonseparated occupancies.

508.3.1 Occupancy classification. Nonseparated occupancies shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. The requirements of this code shall apply to each portion of the building based on the occupancy classification of that space. In addition, the most restrictive provisions of Chapter 9 which apply to the nonseparated occupancies shall apply to the total nonseparated occupancy area. Where nonseparated occupancies occur in a high-rise building, the most restrictive requirements of Section 403 which apply to the nonseparated occupancies shall apply throughout the high-rise building.

508.3.2 Allowable building area and height. The allowable building area and height of the building or portion thereof shall be based on the most restrictive allowances for the occupancy groups under consideration for the type of construction of the building in accordance with Section 503.1.

508.3.3 Separation. No separation is required between nonseparated occupancies.

Exceptions:

1. Group H-2, H-3, H-4, H-5 *and L* occupancies shall be separated from all other occupancies in accordance with Section 508.4.
2. Group I-1, R-1, R-2, *R-2.1* and R-3 dwelling units and sleeping units shall be separated from other dwelling or sleeping units and from other occupancies contiguous to them in accordance with the requirements of Section 420.
3. *No separation is required between Group B, E, R-2 sleeping units and S-2 occupancies accessory to Group I-2, I-2.1 and I-3 of Type I Construction.*

508.4 Separated occupancies. Buildings or portions of buildings that comply with the provisions of this section shall be considered as separated occupancies.

508.4.1 Occupancy classification. Separated occupancies shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. Each separated space shall comply with this code based on the occupancy classification of that portion of the building.

508.4.2 Allowable building area. In each story, the building area shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the actual building area of each separated occupancy divided by the allowable building area of each separated occupancy shall not exceed 1.

buildings based on the occupancy classification and type of construction, provided the special condition complies with the provisions specified in this section for such condition and other applicable requirements of this code. The provisions of Sections 510.2 through 510.8 are to be considered independent and separate from each other.

510.2 Horizontal building separation allowance. A building shall be considered as separate and distinct buildings for the purpose of determining area limitations, continuity of fire walls, limitation of number of stories and type of construction where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The buildings are separated with a horizontal assembly having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 3 hours.
2. The building below the horizontal assembly is of Type IA construction.
3. Shaft, stairway, ramp and escalator enclosures through the horizontal assembly shall have not less than a 2-hour fire-resistance rating with opening protectives in accordance with Section 716.5.

Exception: Where the enclosure walls below the horizontal assembly have not less than a 3-hour fire-resistance rating with opening protectives in accordance with Section 716.5, the enclosure walls extending above the horizontal assembly shall be permitted to have a 1-hour fire-resistance rating, provided:

1. The building above the horizontal assembly is not required to be of Type I construction;
 2. The enclosure connects fewer than four stories; and
 3. The enclosure opening protectives above the horizontal assembly have a fire protection rating of not less than 1 hour.
4. The building or buildings above the horizontal assembly shall be permitted to have multiple Group A occupancy uses, each with an occupant load of less than 300, or Group B, M, R or S occupancies.
 5. The building below the horizontal assembly shall be protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and shall be permitted to be any occupancy allowed by this code except Group H.
 6. The maximum building height in feet (mm) shall not exceed the limits set forth in Section 504.3 for the building having the smaller allowable height as measured from the grade plane.

510.3 Group S-2 enclosed parking garage with Group S-2 open parking garage above. A Group S-2 enclosed parking garage with not more than one story above grade plane and located below a Group S-2 open parking garage shall be classified as a separate and distinct building for the purpose of determining the type of construction where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The allowable area of the building shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the actual area divided by the

allowable area for each separate occupancy shall not exceed 1.

2. The Group S-2 enclosed parking garage is of Type I or II construction and is at least equal to the fire-resistance requirements of the Group S-2 open parking garage.
3. The height and the number of tiers of the Group S-2 open parking garage shall be limited as specified in Table 406.5.4.
4. The floor assembly separating the Group S-2 enclosed parking garage and Group S-2 open parking garage shall be protected as required for the floor assembly of the Group S-2 enclosed parking garage. Openings between the Group S-2 enclosed parking garage and Group S-2 open parking garage, except exit openings, shall not be required to be protected.
5. The Group S-2 enclosed parking garage is used exclusively for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles, but shall be permitted to contain an office, waiting room and toilet room having a total area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m²), and mechanical equipment rooms incidental to the operation of the building.

510.4 Parking beneath Group R. Where a maximum one story above grade plane Group S-2 parking garage, enclosed or open, or combination thereof, of Type I construction or open of Type IV construction, with grade entrance, is provided under a building of Group R, the number of stories to be used in determining the minimum type of construction shall be measured from the floor above such a parking area. The floor assembly between the parking garage and the Group R above shall comply with the type of construction required for the parking garage and shall also provide a fire-resistance rating not less than the mixed occupancy separation required in Section 508.4.

510.5 Group R-1 and R-2 buildings of Type IIIA construction. The height limitation for buildings of Type IIIA construction in Groups R-1 and R-2 shall be increased to six stories and 75 feet (22 860 mm) where the first floor assembly above the basement has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 3 hours and the floor area is subdivided by 2-hour fire-resistance-rated fire walls into areas of not more than 3,000 square feet (279 m²).

510.6 Group R-1 and R-2 buildings of Type IIA construction. The height limitation for buildings of Type IIA construction in Groups R-1 and R-2 shall be increased to nine stories and 100 feet (30 480 mm) where the building is separated by not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from any other building on the lot and from lot lines, the exits are segregated in an area enclosed by a 2-hour fire-resistance-rated fire wall and the first floor assembly has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1½ hours.

510.7 Open parking garage beneath Groups A, I, B, M and R. Open parking garages constructed under Groups A, I, B, M and R shall not exceed the height and area limitations permitted under Section 406.5. The height and area of the portion of the building above the open parking garage shall not exceed the limitations in Section 503 for the upper occu-

pancy. The height, in both feet and stories, of the portion of the building above the open parking garage shall be measured from grade plane and shall include both the open parking garage and the portion of the building above the parking garage.

510.7.1 Fire separation. Fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 between the parking occupancy and the upper occupancy shall correspond to the required fire-resistance rating prescribed in Table 508.4 for the uses involved. The type of construction shall apply to each occupancy individually, except that structural members, including main bracing within the open parking structure, which is necessary to support the upper occupancy, shall be protected with the more restrictive fire-resistance-rated assemblies of the groups involved as shown in Table 601. Means of egress for the upper occupancy shall conform to Chapter 10 and shall be separated from the parking occupancy by fire barriers having not less than a 2-hour fire-resistance rating as required by Section 706 with self-closing doors complying with Section 716 or horizontal assemblies having not less than a 2-hour fire-resistance rating as required by Section 707, with self-closing doors complying with Section 716. Means of egress from the open parking garage shall comply with Section 406.5.

510.8 Group B or M buildings with Group S-2 open parking garage above. Group B or M occupancies located below a Group S-2 open parking garage of a lesser type of construction shall be considered as a separate and distinct building from the Group S-2 open parking garage for the purpose of determining the type of construction where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The buildings are separated with a horizontal assembly having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.
2. The occupancies in the building below the horizontal assembly are limited to Groups B and M.
3. The occupancy above the horizontal assembly is limited to a Group S-2 open parking garage.
4. The building below the horizontal assembly is of Type IA construction.

Exception: The building below the horizontal assembly shall be permitted to be of Type IB or II construction, but not less than the type of construction required for the Group S-2 open parking garage above, where the building below is not greater than one story in height above grade plane.

5. The height and area of the building below the horizontal assembly does not exceed the limits set forth in Section 503.
6. The height and area of the Group S-2 open parking garage does not exceed the limits set forth in Section 406.5. The height, in both feet and stories, of the Group S-2 open parking garage shall be measured from grade

plane and shall include the building below the horizontal assembly.

7. Exits serving the Group S-2 open parking garage discharge directly to a street or public way and are separated from the building below the horizontal assembly by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

510.9 Multiple buildings above a horizontal assembly. Where two or more buildings are provided above the horizontal assembly separating a Group S-2 parking garage or building below from the buildings above in accordance with the special provisions in Sections 510.2, 510.3 or 510.8, the buildings above the horizontal assembly shall be regarded as separate and distinct buildings from each other and shall comply with all other provisions of this code as applicable to each separate and distinct building.

510.10 Group R. [SFM] Buildings housing protective social care homes or in occupancies housing inmates who are not restrained need not be of one-hour fire-resistive construction when not more than two stories in height. In no case shall individual floor areas exceed 3,000 square feet (279 m²). The fire-resistive protection of the exterior walls shall not be less than one hour where such walls are located within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the property line. Openings within such walls are not permitted. Openings in exterior nonrated walls need not be protected.

602.4 Type IV. Type IV construction (Heavy Timber, HT) is that type of construction in which the exterior walls are of noncombustible materials and the interior building elements are of solid or laminated wood without concealed spaces. The details of Type IV construction shall comply with the provisions of this section and Section 2304.11. Exterior walls complying with Section 602.4.1 or 602.4.2 shall be permitted. Minimum solid sawn nominal dimensions are required for structures built using Type IV construction (HT). For glued-laminated members and structural composite lumber (SCL) members, the equivalent net finished width and depths corresponding to the minimum nominal width and depths of solid sawn lumber are required as specified in Table 602.4. Cross-laminated timber (CLT) dimensions used in this section are actual dimensions.

602.4.1 Fire-retardant-treated wood in exterior walls.

Fire-retardant-treated wood framing complying with Section 2303.2 shall be permitted within exterior wall assemblies with a 2-hour rating or less.

602.4.2 Cross-laminated timber in exterior walls.

Cross-laminated timber complying with Section 2303.1.4 shall be permitted within exterior wall assemblies with a 2-hour rating or less, provided the exterior surface of the cross-laminated timber is protected by one the following:

1. Fire-retardant-treated wood sheathing complying with Section 2303.2 and not less than ¹⁵/₃₂ inch (12 mm) thick;
2. Gypsum board not less than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick; or
3. A noncombustible material.

602.4.3 Columns. Wood columns shall be sawn or glued laminated and shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm), nominal, in any dimension where supporting floor loads and not less than 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in width and not less than 8 inches (203 mm) nominal in depth where supporting roof and ceiling loads only. Columns shall be continuous or superimposed and connected in an approved manner. Protection in accordance with Section 704.2 is not required.

602.4.4 Floor framing. Wood beams and girders shall be of sawn or glued-laminated timber and shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in width and not less than 10 inches (254 mm) nominal in depth. Framed sawn or glued-laminated timber arches, which spring from the floor line and support floor loads, shall be not less than 8 inches (203

mm) nominal in any dimension. Framed timber trusses supporting floor loads shall have members of not less than 8 inches (203 mm) nominal in any dimension.

602.4.5 Roof framing. Wood-frame or glued-laminated arches for roof construction, which spring from the floor line or from grade and do not support floor loads, shall have members not less than 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in width and have not less than 8 inches (203 mm) nominal in depth for the lower half of the height and not less than 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in depth for the upper half. Framed or glued-laminated arches for roof construction that spring from the top of walls or wall abutments, framed timber trusses and other roof framing, which do not support floor loads, shall have members not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in width and not less than 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in depth. Spaced members shall be permitted to be composed of two or more pieces not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness where blocked solidly throughout their intervening spaces or where spaces are tightly closed by a continuous wood cover plate of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness secured to the underside of the members. Splice plates shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness. Where protected by approved automatic sprinklers under the roof deck, framing members shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in width.

602.4.6 Floors. Floors shall be without concealed spaces. Wood floors shall be constructed in accordance with Section 602.4.6.1 or 602.4.6.2.

602.4.6.1 Sawn or glued-laminated plank floors.

Sawn or glued-laminated plank floors shall be one of the following:

1. Sawn or glued-laminated planks, splined or tongue-and-groove, of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness covered with 1-inch (25 mm) nominal dimension tongue-and-groove flooring, laid crosswise or diagonally, ¹⁵/₃₂-inch (12 mm) wood structural panel or 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) particleboard.
2. Planks not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in width set on edge close together and well spiked and covered with 1-inch (25 mm) nominal dimension flooring or ¹⁵/₃₂-inch (12 mm) wood structural panel or 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) particleboard.

**TABLE 602.4
WOOD MEMBER SIZE EQUIVALENCIES**

MINIMUM NOMINAL SOLID SAWN SIZE		MINIMUM GLUED-LAMINATED NET SIZE		MINIMUM STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER NET SIZE	
Width, inch	Depth, inch	Width, inch	Depth, inch	Width, inch	Depth, inch
8	8	6 ³ / ₄	8 ¹ / ₄	7	7 ¹ / ₂
6	10	5	10 ¹ / ₂	5 ¹ / ₄	9 ¹ / ₂
6	8	5	8 ¹ / ₄	5 ¹ / ₄	7 ¹ / ₂
6	6	5	6	5 ¹ / ₄	5 ¹ / ₂
4	6	3	6 ⁷ / ₈	3 ¹ / ₂	5 ¹ / ₂

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

The lumber shall be laid so that no continuous line of joints will occur except at points of support. Floors shall not extend closer than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) to walls. Such 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) space shall be covered by a molding fastened to the wall and so arranged that it will not obstruct the swelling or shrinkage movements of the floor. Corbelling of masonry walls under the floor shall be permitted to be used in place of molding.

602.4.6.2 Cross-laminated timber floors. Cross-laminated timber shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness. Cross-laminated timber shall be continuous from support to support and mechanically fastened to one another. Cross-laminated timber shall be permitted to be connected to walls without a shrinkage gap providing swelling or shrinking is considered in the design. Corbelling of masonry walls under the floor shall be permitted to be used.

602.4.7 Roofs. Roofs shall be without concealed spaces and wood roof decks shall be sawn or glued laminated, splined or tongue-and-groove plank, not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness; 1 1/8-inch-thick (32 mm) wood structural panel (exterior glue); planks not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in width, set on edge close together and laid as required for floors; or of cross-laminated timber. Other types of decking shall be permitted to be used if providing equivalent fire resistance and structural properties.

Cross-laminated timber roofs shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness and shall be continuous from support to support and mechanically fastened to one another.

602.4.8 Partitions and walls. Partitions and walls shall comply with Section 602.4.8.1 or 602.4.8.2.

602.4.8.1 Interior walls and partitions. Interior walls and partitions shall be of solid wood construction formed by not less than two layers of 1-inch (25 mm) matched boards or laminated construction 4 inches (102 mm) thick, or of 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

602.4.8.2 Exterior walls. Exterior walls shall be of one of the following:

1. Noncombustible materials.
2. Not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in thickness and constructed of one of the following:
 - 2.1. Fire-retardant-treated wood in accordance with Section 2303.2 and complying with Section 602.4.1.
 - 2.2. Cross-laminated timber complying with Section 602.4.2.

602.4.9 Exterior structural members. Where a horizontal separation of 20 feet (6096 mm) or more is provided, wood columns and arches conforming to heavy timber sizes shall be permitted to be used externally.

602.5 Type V. Type V construction is that type of construction in which the structural elements, exterior walls and interior walls are of any materials permitted by this code.

**SECTION 603
COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL IN
TYPE I AND II CONSTRUCTION**

603.1 Allowable materials. Combustible materials shall be permitted in buildings of Type I or II construction in the following applications and in accordance with Sections 603.1.1 through 603.1.3:

1. Fire-retardant-treated wood shall be permitted in:
 - 1.1. Nonbearing partitions where the required fire-resistance rating is 2 hours or less.
 - 1.2. Nonbearing exterior walls where fire-resistance rated construction is not required.
 - 1.3. Roof construction, including girders, trusses, framing and decking.

Exception: In buildings of Type IA construction exceeding two stories above grade plane, fire-retardant-treated wood is not permitted in roof construction where the vertical distance from the upper floor to the roof is less than 20 feet (6096 mm).

2. Thermal and acoustical insulation, other than foam plastics, having a flame spread index of not more than 25.

Exceptions:

1. Insulation placed between two layers of noncombustible materials without an intervening airspace shall be allowed to have a flame spread index of not more than 100.
2. Insulation installed between a finished floor and solid decking without intervening airspace shall be allowed to have a flame spread index of not more than 200.
3. Foam plastics in accordance with Chapter 26.
4. Roof coverings that have an A, B or C classification.
5. Interior floor finish and floor covering materials installed in accordance with Section 804.
6. Millwork such as doors, door frames, window sashes and frames.
7. Interior wall and ceiling finishes installed in accordance with Sections 801 and 803.
8. Trim installed in accordance with Section 806.
9. Where not installed greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) above grade, show windows, nailing or furring strips and wooden bulkheads below show windows, including their frames, aprons and show cases.
10. Finish flooring installed in accordance with Section 805.
11. Partitions dividing portions of stores, offices or similar places occupied by one tenant only and that do not establish a corridor serving an occupant load of 30 or more shall be permitted to be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood, 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or of wood panels or similar light construction up to 6 feet (1829 mm) in height.

12. Stages and platforms constructed in accordance with Sections 410.3 and 410.4, respectively.
13. Combustible exterior wall coverings, balconies and similar projections and bay or oriel windows in accordance with Chapter 14.
14. Blocking such as for handrails, millwork, cabinets and window and door frames.
15. Light-transmitting plastics as permitted by Chapter 26.
16. Mastics and caulking materials applied to provide flexible seals between components of exterior wall construction.
17. Exterior plastic veneer installed in accordance with Section 2605.2.
18. Nailing or furring strips as permitted by Section 803.11.
19. Heavy timber as permitted by Note c to Table 601 and Sections 602.4.7 and 1406.3.
20. Aggregates, component materials and admixtures as permitted by Section 703.2.2.
21. Sprayed fire-resistant materials and intumescent and mastic fire-resistant coatings, determined on the basis of fire resistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2 and installed in accordance with Sections 1705.14 and 1705.15, respectively.
22. Materials used to protect penetrations in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance with Section 714.
23. Materials used to protect joints in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance with Section 715.
24. Materials allowed in the concealed spaces of buildings of Types I and II construction in accordance with Section 718.5.
25. Materials exposed within plenums complying with Section 602 of the *California Mechanical Code*.
26. Wall construction of freezers and coolers of less than 1,000 square feet (92.9 m²), in size, lined on both sides with noncombustible materials and the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

603.1.1 Ducts. The use of nonmetallic ducts shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of the *California Mechanical Code*.

603.1.2 Piping. The use of combustible piping materials shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of the *California Mechanical Code* and the *California Plumbing Code*.

603.1.3 Electrical. The use of electrical wiring methods with combustible insulation, tubing, raceways and related components shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of *this code and the California Electrical Code*.

705.8.1 Allowable area of openings. The maximum area of unprotected and protected openings permitted in an exterior wall in any story of a building shall not exceed the percentages specified in Table 705.8.

Exceptions:

1. In other than Group H occupancies, unlimited unprotected openings are permitted in the first story above grade plane either:
 - 1.1. Where the wall faces a street and has a fire separation distance of more than 15 feet (4572 mm); or

- 1.2. Where the wall faces an unoccupied space. The unoccupied space shall be on the same lot or dedicated for public use, shall not be less than 30 feet (9144 mm) in width and shall have access from a street by a posted fire lane in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.
2. Buildings whose exterior bearing walls, exterior nonbearing walls and exterior primary structural frame are not required to be fire-resistance rated

**TABLE 705.8
MAXIMUM AREA OF EXTERIOR WALL OPENINGS BASED ON
FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE AND DEGREE OF OPENING PROTECTION**

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)	DEGREE OF OPENING PROTECTION	ALLOWABLE AREA ^a
0 to less than 3 ^{b, c, k}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	Not Permitted ^k
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ⁱ	Not Permitted ^k
	Protected (P)	Not Permitted ^k
3 to less than 5 ^{d, e}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	Not Permitted
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ⁱ	15%
	Protected (P)	15%
5 to less than 10 ^{e, f, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	10% ^h
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ⁱ	25%
	Protected (P)	25%
10 to less than 15 ^{e, f, g, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	15% ^h
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ⁱ	45%
	Protected (P)	45%
15 to less than 20 ^{f, g, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	25%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ⁱ	75%
	Protected (P)	75%
20 to less than 25 ^{f, g, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	45%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ⁱ	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit
25 to less than 30 ^{f, g, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	70%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ⁱ	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit
30 or greater	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	No Limit
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ⁱ	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

UP, NS = Unprotected openings in buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

UP, S = Unprotected openings in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

P = Openings protected with an opening protective assembly in accordance with Section 705.8.2.

a. Values indicated are the percentage of the area of the exterior wall, per story.

b. For the requirements for fire walls of buildings with differing heights, see Section 706.6.1.

c. For openings in a fire wall for buildings on the same lot, see Section 706.8.

d. The maximum percentage of unprotected and protected openings shall be 25 percent for Group R-3 occupancies.

e. Unprotected openings shall not be permitted for openings with a fire separation distance of less than 15 feet for Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies.

f. The area of unprotected and protected openings shall not be limited for Group R-3 occupancies, with a fire separation distance of 5 feet or greater.

g. The area of openings in an open parking structure with a fire separation distance of 10 feet or greater shall not be limited.

h. Includes buildings accessory to Group R-3.

i. Not applicable to Group H-1, H-2 and H-3 occupancies.

j. The area of openings in a building containing only a Group U occupancy private garage or carport with a fire separation distance of 5 feet (1523 mm) or greater shall not be limited.

k. For openings between S-2 parking garage and Group R-2 building, see Section 705.3, Exception 2.

shall be permitted to have unlimited unprotected openings.

705.8.2 Protected openings. Where openings are required to be protected, fire doors and fire shutters shall comply with Section 716.5 and fire window assemblies shall comply with Section 716.6.

Exception: Opening protectives are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the exterior openings are protected by a water curtain using automatic sprinklers approved for that use.

705.8.3 Unprotected openings. Where unprotected openings are permitted, windows and doors shall be constructed of any approved materials. Glazing shall conform to the requirements of Chapters 24 and 26.

705.8.4 Mixed openings. Where both unprotected and protected openings are located in the exterior wall in any story of a building, the total area of openings shall be determined in accordance with the following:

$$(A_p/a_p) + (A_u/a_u) \leq 1 \quad \text{(Equation 7-2)}$$

where:

A_p = Actual area of protected openings, or the equivalent area of protected openings, A_e (see Section 705.7).

a_p = Allowable area of protected openings.

A_u = Actual area of unprotected openings.

a_u = Allowable area of unprotected openings.

705.8.5 Vertical separation of openings. Openings in exterior walls in adjacent stories shall be separated vertically to protect against fire spread on the exterior of the buildings where the openings are within 5 feet (1524 mm) of each other horizontally and the opening in the lower story is not a protected opening with a fire protection rating of not less than $3/4$ hour. Such openings shall be separated vertically not less than 3 feet (914 mm) by spandrel girders, exterior walls or other similar assemblies that have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, rated for exposure to fire from both sides, or by flame barriers that extend horizontally not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond the exterior wall. Flame barriers shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. The unexposed surface temperature limitations specified in ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not apply to the flame barriers or vertical separation unless otherwise required by the provisions of this code.

Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply to buildings that are three stories or less above grade plane.
2. This section shall not apply to buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. Open parking garages.

705.8.6 Vertical exposure. For buildings on the same lot, opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than $3/4$ hour shall be provided in every opening that is less than 15 feet (4572 mm) vertically above the roof of an adjacent building or structure based on assuming an imag-

inary line between them. The opening protectives are required where the fire separation distance between the imaginary line and the adjacent building or structure is less than 15 feet (4572 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Opening protectives are not required where the roof assembly of the adjacent building or structure has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour for a minimum distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the exterior wall facing the imaginary line and the entire length and span of the supporting elements for the fire-resistance-rated roof assembly has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.
2. Buildings on the same lot and considered as portions of one building in accordance with Section 705.3 are not required to comply with Section 705.8.6.

705.9 Joints. Joints made in or between exterior walls required by this section to have a fire-resistance rating shall comply with Section 715.

Exception: Joints in exterior walls that are permitted to have unprotected openings.

705.9.1 Voids. The void created at the intersection of a floor/ceiling assembly and an exterior curtain wall assembly shall be protected in accordance with Section 715.4.

705.10 Ducts and air transfer openings. Penetrations by air ducts and air transfer openings in fire-resistance-rated exterior walls required to have protected openings shall comply with Section 717.

Exception: Foundation vents installed in accordance with this code are permitted.

705.11 Parapets. Parapets shall be provided on exterior walls of buildings.

Exceptions: A parapet need not be provided on an exterior wall where any of the following conditions exist:

1. The wall is not required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Table 602 because of fire separation distance.
2. The building has an area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) on any floor.
3. Walls that terminate at roofs of not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or where the roof, including the deck or slab and supporting construction, is constructed entirely of noncombustible materials.
4. One-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior walls that terminate at the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab, provided:
 - 4.1. Where the roof/ceiling framing elements are parallel to the walls, such framing and elements supporting such framing shall not be of less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a width of 4 feet (1220 mm) for Groups R and U and 10 feet (3048 mm) for other occupancies, measured from the interior side of the wall.

**SECTION 722
CALCULATED FIRE RESISTANCE**

722.1 General. The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire resistance of specific materials or combinations of materials is established by calculations. These procedures apply only to the information contained in this section and shall not be otherwise used. The calculated fire resistance of concrete, concrete masonry and clay masonry assemblies shall be permitted in accordance with ACI 216.1/TMS 0216. The calculated fire resistance of steel assemblies shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 29. The calculated fire resistance of exposed wood members and wood decking shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 16 of ANSI/AWC *National Design Specification for Wood Construction (NDS)*.

722.1.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

- CERAMIC FIBER BLANKET.**
- CONCRETE, CARBONATE AGGREGATE.**
- CONCRETE, CELLULAR.**
- CONCRETE, LIGHTWEIGHT AGGREGATE.**
- CONCRETE, PERLITE.**
- CONCRETE, SAND-LIGHTWEIGHT.**
- CONCRETE, SILICEOUS AGGREGATE.**
- CONCRETE, VERMICULITE.**
- GLASS FIBERBOARD.**
- MINERAL BOARD.**

722.2 Concrete assemblies. The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire-resistance ratings of concrete assemblies are established by calculations.

722.2.1 Concrete walls. Cast-in-place and precast concrete walls shall comply with Section 722.2.1.1. Multiwythe concrete walls shall comply with Section 722.2.1.2. Joints between precast panels shall comply with Section 722.2.1.3. Concrete walls with gypsum wallboard or plaster finish shall comply with Section 722.2.1.4.

722.2.1.1 Cast-in-place or precast walls. The minimum equivalent thicknesses of cast-in-place or precast concrete walls for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours are shown in Table 722.2.1.1. For solid walls with flat vertical surfaces, the equivalent thickness is the same as the actual thickness. The values in Table 722.2.1.1 apply to plain, reinforced or prestressed concrete walls.

**TABLE 722.2.1.1
MINIMUM EQUIVALENT THICKNESS OF
CAST-IN-PLACE OR PRECAST CONCRETE WALLS,
LOAD-BEARING OR NONLOAD-BEARING**

CONCRETE TYPE	MINIMUM SLAB THICKNESS (inches) FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF				
	1 hour	1½ hours	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
Siliceous	3.5	4.3	5.0	6.2	7.0
Carbonate	3.2	4.0	4.6	5.7	6.6
Sand-lightweight	2.7	3.3	3.8	4.6	5.4
Lightweight	2.5	3.1	3.6	4.4	5.1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

722.2.1.1.1 Hollow-core precast wall panels. For hollow-core precast concrete wall panels in which the cores are of constant cross section throughout the length, calculation of the equivalent thickness by dividing the net cross-sectional area (the gross cross section minus the area of the cores) of the panel by its width shall be permitted.

722.2.1.1.2 Core spaces filled. Where all of the core spaces of hollow-core wall panels are filled with loose-fill material, such as expanded shale, clay, or slag, or vermiculite or perlite, the fire-resistance rating of the wall is the same as that of a solid wall of the same concrete type and of the same over all thickness.

722.2.1.1.3 Tapered cross sections. The thickness of panels with tapered cross sections shall be that determined at a distance $2t$ or 6 inches (152 mm), whichever is less, from the point of minimum thickness, where t is the minimum thickness.

722.2.1.1.4 Ribbed or undulating surfaces. The equivalent thickness of panels with ribbed or undulating surfaces shall be determined by one of the following expressions:

For $s \geq 4t$, the thickness to be used shall be t

For $s \leq 2t$, the thickness to be used shall be t_e

For $4t > s > 2t$, the thickness to be used shall be

$$t + \left(\frac{4t}{s} - 1\right)(t_e - t) \tag{Equation 7-3}$$

where:

s = Spacing of ribs or undulations.

t = Minimum thickness.

t_e = Equivalent thickness of the panel calculated as the net cross-sectional area of the panel divided by the width, in which the maximum thickness used in the calculation shall not exceed $2t$.

TABLE 721.1(1)
MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON TIME PERIODS
FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS^m

STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED	ITEM NUMBER	INSULATING MATERIAL USED	MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
1. Steel columns and all of primary trusses (continued)	1-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 6" × 6" or greater (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel). ^a	2½	2	1½	1
	1-1.2	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 8" × 8" or greater (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel). ^a	2	1½	1	1
	1-1.3	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 12" × 12" or greater (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel). ^a	1½	1	1	1
	1-1.4	Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 1-1.1, members 6" × 6" or greater. ^a	3	2	1½	1
	1-1.5	Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 1-1.1, members 8" × 8" or greater. ^a	2½	2	1	1
	1-1.6	Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 1-1.1, members 12" × 12" or greater. ^a	2	1	1	1
	1-2.1	Clay or shale brick with brick and mortar fill. ^a	¾	—	—	¼
	1-3.1	4" hollow clay tile in two 2" layers; ½" mortar between tile and column; ⅜" metal mesh 0.046" wire diameter in horizontal joints; tile fill. ^a	4	—	—	—
	1-3.2	2" hollow clay tile; ¼" mortar between tile and column; ⅜" metal mesh 0.046" wire diameter in horizontal joints; limestone concrete fill ^a ; plastered with ¾" gypsum plaster.	3	—	—	—
	1-3.3	2" hollow clay tile with outside wire ties 0.08" diameter at each course of tile or ⅜" metal mesh 0.046" diameter wire in horizontal joints; limestone or trap-rock concrete fill ^a extending 1" outside column on all sides.	—	—	3	—
	1-3.4	2" hollow clay tile with outside wire ties 0.08" diameter at each course of tile with or without concrete fill; ¾" mortar between tile and column.	—	—	—	2
	1-4.1	Cement plaster over metal lath wire tied to ¾" cold-rolled vertical channels with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 3" to 6" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 ½ by volume, cement to sand.	—	—	2½ ^b	⅞
	1-5.1	Vermiculite concrete, 1:4 mix by volume over paperbacked wire fabric lath wrapped directly around column with additional 2" × 2" 0.065"/0.065" (No. 16/16 B.W. gage) wire fabric placed ¾" from outer concrete surface. Wire fabric tied with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire spaced 6" on center for inner layer and 2" on center for outer layer.	2	—	—	—
	1-6.1	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster over metal lath wrapped around column and furred 1¼" from column flanges. Sheets lapped at ends and tied at 6" intervals with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) tie wire. Plaster pushed through to flanges.	1½	1	—	—
	1-6.2	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster over self-furring metal lath wrapped directly around column, lapped 1" and tied at 6" intervals with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire.	¾	⅜	1	—
	1-6.3	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath applied to ¾" cold-rolled channels spaced 24" apart vertically and wrapped flatwise around column.	1½	—	—	—
	1-6.4	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster over two layers of ½" plain full-length gypsum lath applied tight to column flanges. Lath wrapped with 1" hexagonal mesh of No. 20 gage wire and tied with doubled 0.035" diameter (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 23" on center. For three-coat work, the plaster mix for the second coat shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to 2½ cubic feet of aggregate for the 3-hour system.	2½	2	—	—

(continued)

804.4.2 Minimum critical radiant flux. In all occupancies, interior floor finish and floor covering materials in enclosures for stairways and ramps, exit passageways, corridors and rooms or spaces not separated from corridors by partitions extending from the floor to the underside of the ceiling shall withstand a minimum critical radiant flux. The minimum critical radiant flux shall not be less than Class I in Groups I-2 and R-2.1 and not less than Class II in Groups A, B, E, H, I-2.1, I-4, M, R-1, R-2 and S.

Exception: Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, Class II materials are permitted in any area where Class I materials are required, and materials complying with *ASTM Standard E648*, and having a specific optical density smoke rating not to exceed 450 per *ASTM E662* are permitted in any area where Class II materials are required.

804.4.3 Group I-3 Occupancy floor surfaces. Interior floor finish and floor coverings occupied by inmates or patients whose personal liberties are restrained shall be noncombustible.

Exception: Noncombustible floor finish and floor coverings in areas where restraint is not used may have carpet or other floor covering materials applied in areas protected by an automatic sprinkler system and meeting *ASTM Standard E648*, and having a specific optical density smoke rating not to exceed 450 per *ASTM E662*. The carpeting and carpet padding shall be tested as a unit in accordance with floor covering radiant panel test meeting class I and has a critical radiant flux limit of not less than 0.45 watt per centimeter square. The carpeting and padding shall be identified by a hang-tag or other suitable method as to manufacturer and style and shall indicate the classification of the material based on the limits set forth above.

**SECTION 805
COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS IN
TYPES I AND II CONSTRUCTION**

805.1 Application. Combustible materials installed on or embedded in floors of buildings of Type I or II construction shall comply with Sections 805.1.1 through 805.1.3.

Exception: Stages and platforms constructed in accordance with Sections 410.3 and 410.4, respectively.

805.1.1 Subfloor construction. Floor sleepers, bucks and nailing blocks shall not be constructed of combustible materials, unless the space between the fire-resistance-rated floor assembly and the flooring is either solidly filled with noncombustible materials or fireblocked in accordance with Section 718, and provided that such open spaces shall not extend under or through permanent partitions or walls.

805.1.2 Wood finish flooring. Wood finish flooring is permitted to be attached directly to the embedded or fire-

blocked wood sleepers and shall be permitted where cemented directly to the top surface of fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies or directly to a wood subfloor attached to sleepers as provided for in Section 805.1.1.

805.1.3 Insulating boards. Combustible insulating boards not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick and covered with finish flooring are permitted where attached directly to a noncombustible floor assembly or to wood subflooring attached to sleepers as provided for in Section 805.1.1.

**SECTION 806
DECORATIVE MATERIALS AND TRIM**

[F] 806.1 General. Combustible decorative materials, other than decorative vegetation, shall comply with Sections 806.2 through 806.8.

[F] 806.2 Noncombustible materials. The permissible amount of noncombustible materials shall not be limited.

[F] 806.3 Combustible decorative materials. In other than Group I-3, curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall comply with Section 806.4 and shall not exceed 10 percent of the specific wall or ceiling area to which such materials are attached.

Fixed or movable walls and partitions, paneling, wall pads and crash pads applied structurally or for decoration, acoustical correction, surface insulation or other purposes shall be considered interior finish shall comply with Section 803 and shall not be considered decorative materials or furnishings.

Exceptions:

1. In auditoriums in Group A, the permissible amount of curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall not exceed 75 percent of the aggregate wall area where the building is equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and where the material is installed in accordance with Section 803.13 of this code.
2. In Group R-2 dormitories, within sleeping units and dwelling units, the permissible amount of curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar decorative materials suspended from walls or ceiling shall not exceed 50 percent of the aggregate wall areas where the building is equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.
3. In Group B and M occupancies, the amount of combustible fabric partitions suspended from the ceiling and not supported by the floor shall comply with Section 806.4 and shall not be limited.

[F] 806.4 Acceptance criteria and reports. Where required to exhibit improved fire performance, curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall be tested by an

INTERIOR FINISHES

approved agency and shall be flame resistant in accordance with the provisions set forth in CCR, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 8. Reports of test results shall be prepared in accordance with the test method used and furnished to the building official upon request.

[F] 806.5 Foam plastic. Foam plastic used as trim in any occupancy shall comply with Section 2604.2.

[F] 806.6 Pyroxylin plastic. Imitation leather or other material consisting of or coated with a pyroxylin or similarly hazardous base shall not be used in Group A occupancies.

[F] 806.7 Interior trim. Material, other than foam plastic used as interior trim, shall have a minimum *Class B flame spread and 450 smoke-developed index in Group I-3 and for all other occupancies* Class C flame spread and smoke-developed index when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, as described in Section 803.1.1. Combustible trim, excluding handrails and guardrails, shall not exceed 10 percent of the specific wall or ceiling area in which it is attached.

[F] 806.8 Interior floor-wall base. Interior floor-wall base that is 6 inches (152 mm) or less in height shall be tested in accordance with Section 804.2 and shall be not less than Class II. Where a Class I floor finish is required, the floor-wall base shall be Class I.

Exception: Interior trim materials that comply with Section 806.7.

SECTION 807 INSULATION

807.1 Insulation. Thermal and acoustical insulation shall comply with Section 720.

SECTION 808 ACOUSTICAL CEILING SYSTEMS

808.1 Acoustical ceiling systems. The quality, design, fabrication and erection of metal suspension systems for acoustical tile and lay-in panel ceilings in buildings or structures shall conform with generally accepted engineering practice, the provisions of this chapter and other applicable requirements of this code.

808.1.1 Materials and installation. Acoustical materials complying with the interior finish requirements of Section 803 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and applicable provisions for applying interior finish.

808.1.1.1 Suspended acoustical ceilings. Suspended acoustical ceiling systems shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of ASTM C635 and ASTM C636.

808.1.1.2 Fire-resistance-rated construction. Acoustical ceiling systems that are part of fire-resistance-rated construction shall be installed in the same manner used in the assembly tested and shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 7.

[F] 903.2.7.1 High-piled storage. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in accordance with the *California Fire Code* in all buildings of Group M where storage of merchandise is in high-piled or rack storage arrays.

[F] 903.2.8 Group R. An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3 shall be provided throughout all buildings with a Group R fire area.

Exceptions:

1. Existing Group R-3 occupancies converted to Group R-3.1 occupancies not housing bedridden clients, not housing nonambulatory clients above the first floor and not housing clients above the second floor.
2. Existing Group R-3 occupancies converted to Group R-3.1 occupancies housing only one bedridden client and complying with Section 435.8.3.3.
3. Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13113 occupancies housing ambulatory children only, none of whom are mentally ill children or children with intellectual disabilities, and the buildings or portions thereof in which such children are housed are not more than two stories in height, and buildings or portions thereof housing such children have an automatic fire alarm system activated by approved smoke detectors.
4. Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143.6 occupancies licensed for protective social care which house ambulatory clients only, none of whom is a child (under the age of 18 years), or who is elderly (65 years of age or over).

When not used for height increases or for area increases, an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall be allowed in Group R-2.1 occupancies.

An automatic sprinkler system designed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall not be utilized in Group R-2.1 or R-4 occupancies.

[F] 903.2.8.1 Group R-3. An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in Group R-3 occupancies.

903.2.8.2 Reserved.

903.2.8.3 Group R-4. An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall be permitted in Group R-4 occupancies. Attics shall be protected in accordance with Section 903.2.8.3.1 or 903.2.8.3.2.

[F] 903.2.8.3.1 Attics used for living purposes, storage or fuel-fired equipment. Attics used for living purposes, storage or fuel-fired equipment shall be protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

[F] 903.2.8.3.2 Attics not used for living purposes, storage or fuel-fired equipment. Attics not used for living purposes, storage or fuel-fired equipment shall be protected in accordance with one of the following:

1. Attics protected throughout by a heat detector system arranged to activate the building fire alarm system in accordance with Section 907.2.10.
2. Attics constructed of noncombustible materials.
3. Attics constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood framing complying with Section 2303.2.
4. The automatic sprinkler system shall be extended to provide protection throughout the attic space.

903.2.8.4 Group R-3.1. An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in *Group R-3.1 occupancies with six or fewer individuals in a single-family dwelling.*

[F] 903.2.9 Group S-1. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all buildings containing a Group S-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. A Group S-1 fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
2. A Group S-1 fire area is located more than three stories above grade plane.
3. The combined area of all Group S-1 fire areas on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m²).
4. A Group S-1 fire area used for the storage of commercial motor vehicles where the fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).
5. A Group S-1 occupancy used for the storage of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 2,500 square feet (232 m²).

[F] 903.2.9.1 Repair garages. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all buildings used as repair garages in accordance with Section 406, as shown:

1. Buildings having two or more stories above grade plane, including basements, with a fire area containing a repair garage exceeding 10,000 square feet (929 m²).
2. Buildings no more than one story above grade plane, with a fire area containing a repair garage exceeding 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
3. Buildings with repair garages servicing vehicles parked in basements.
4. A Group S-1 fire area used for the repair of commercial motor vehicles where the fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).

[F] **903.2.9.2 Bulk storage of tires.** Buildings and structures where the area for the storage of tires exceeds 20,000 cubic feet (566 m³) shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

[F] **903.2.10 Group S-2 enclosed parking garages.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings classified as enclosed parking garages in accordance with Section 406.4 as follows:

1. Where the fire area of the enclosed parking garage exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²); or
2. Where the enclosed parking garage is located beneath other groups.

Exception: Enclosed parking garages located beneath Group R-3 occupancies.

[F] **903.2.10.1 Commercial parking garages.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings used for storage of commercial motor vehicles where the fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).

[F] **903.2.11 Specific building areas and hazards.** In all occupancies other than Group U, an automatic sprinkler system shall be installed for building design or hazards in the locations set forth in Sections 903.2.11.1 through 903.2.11.6.

[F] **903.2.11.1 Stories without openings.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout all stories, including basements, of all buildings where the floor area exceeds 1,500 square feet (139.4 m²) and where there is not provided not fewer than one of the following types of exterior wall openings:

1. Openings below grade that lead directly to ground level by an exterior stairway complying with Section 1011 or an outside ramp complying with Section 1012. Openings shall be located in each 50 linear feet (15 240 mm), or fraction thereof, of exterior wall in the story on at least one side. The required openings shall be distributed such that the lineal distance between adjacent openings does not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).
2. Openings entirely above the adjoining ground level totaling not less than 20 square feet (1.86 m²) in each 50 linear feet (15 240 mm), or fraction thereof, of exterior wall in the story on at least one side. The required openings shall be distributed such that the lineal distance between adjacent openings does not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm). The height of the bottom of the clear opening shall not exceed 44 inches (1118 mm) measured from the floor.

[F] **903.2.11.1.1 Opening dimensions and access.** Openings shall have a minimum dimension of not less than 30 inches (762 mm). Such openings shall be accessible to the fire department from the exterior

and shall not be obstructed in a manner such that fire fighting or rescue cannot be accomplished from the exterior.

[F] **903.2.11.1.2 Openings on one side only.** Where openings in a story are provided on only one side and the opposite wall of such story is more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) from such openings, the story shall be equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system, or openings as specified above shall be provided on not fewer than two sides of the story.

[F] **903.2.11.1.3 Basements.** Where any portion of a basement is located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) from openings required by Section 903.2.11.1, or where walls, partitions or other obstructions are installed that restrict the application of water from hose streams, the basement shall be equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system.

[F] **903.2.11.2 Rubbish and linen chutes.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed at the top of rubbish and linen chutes and in their terminal rooms. Chutes shall have additional sprinkler heads installed at alternate floors and at the lowest intake. Where a rubbish chute extends through a building more than one floor below the lowest intake, the extension shall have sprinklers installed that are recessed from the drop area of the chute and protected from freezing in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Such sprinklers shall be installed at alternate floors, beginning with the second level below the last intake and ending with the floor above the discharge. Chute sprinklers shall be accessible for servicing.

[F] **903.2.11.3 Buildings 55 feet or more in height.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout buildings that have one or more stories with an occupant load of 30 or more located 55 feet (16 764 mm) or more above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, measured to the finished floor.

Exceptions:

1. Open parking structures.
2. Occupancies in Group F-2.

[F] **903.2.11.4 Ducts conveying hazardous exhausts.** Where required by the *California Mechanical Code*, automatic sprinklers shall be provided in ducts conveying hazardous exhaust or flammable or combustible materials.

Exception: Ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is less than 10 inches (254 mm).

[F] **903.2.11.5 Commercial cooking operations.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed in commercial kitchen exhaust hood and duct systems where an automatic sprinkler system is used to comply with Section 904.

the room smoke detector, provided it meets all the required alerting functions.

2. *Group I-2 nurses' stations. A minimum of one (1) smoke detector shall be installed at the nurses' station and centrally located.*
3. *In waiting areas and corridors onto which they open, in the same smoke compartment, in accordance with Section 407.2.1.*

[F] 907.2.6.3 Group I-3 occupancies. Group I-3 occupancies shall be equipped with a manual fire alarm system and automatic smoke detection system installed for alerting staff.

Exception: *An automatic smoke detection system is not required within temporary holding cells.*

[F] 907.2.6.3.1 System initiation. Actuation of an automatic fire-extinguishing system, automatic sprinkler system, a manual fire alarm box or a fire detector shall initiate an approved fire alarm signal which automatically notifies staff.

[F] 907.2.6.3.2 Manual fire alarm boxes. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required to be located in accordance with Section 907.4.2 where the fire alarm boxes are provided at staff-attended locations having direct supervision over areas where manual fire alarm boxes have been omitted.

[F] 907.2.6.3.2.1 Manual fire alarm boxes in detainee areas. Manual fire alarm boxes are allowed to be locked in areas occupied by detainees, provided that staff members are present within the subject area and have keys readily available to operate the manual fire alarm boxes.

[F] 907.2.6.3.3 Automatic smoke detection system. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed throughout resident housing areas, including sleeping units and contiguous day rooms, group activity spaces and other common spaces normally accessible to inmates.

Exceptions:

1. *Other approved smoke detection arrangements may be used to prevent damage or tampering or for other purposes provided the function of detecting any fire is fulfilled and the location of the detectors is such that the speed of detection will be equivalent to that provided by the spacing and location required in accordance with NFPA 72 as referenced in Chapter 35. This may include the location of detectors in return air ducts from cells, behind grilles or in other locations. Spot type, combination duct and open area smoke detectors may be used when located not more than 14 inches (356mm) from the return air grill. For initiation and annunciation purposes, these detectors may be combined in*

groups of four. The fire code official having jurisdiction, however, must approve the proposed equivalent performance of the design.

2. *For detention housing and/or mental health housing area(s), including correctional medical and mental health uses, automatic smoke detection system in sleeping units shall not be required when all of the following conditions are met:*

2.1. All rooms, including the inmate cells are provided with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2.2. Building is continuously staffed by a correctional officer at all times.

3. *Smoke detectors are not required to be installed in inmate cells with two or fewer occupants in detention facilities which do not have a correctional medical and mental health use.*

4. *Smoke detectors are not required to be installed in inmate day rooms of detention facilities where 24-hour direct visual supervision is provided by a correctional officer(s) and a manual fire alarm box is located in the control room.*

907.2.6.3.4 System annunciation. *A staff alerting fire alarm shall sound at all staff control stations on the floor of activation and an audible and visual signal shall be indicated on an annunciator at the facility control center upon activation of any automatic extinguishing system, automatic detection system, or any smoke detector or manual actuating or initiating device. In addition, where there are staff-control stations on the floor, an audible, visual and manual alarm shall be located in each staff control station.*

Fire and trouble signals of fire alarm systems and sprinkler water-flow and supervisory signals of extinguishing systems shall be annunciated in an area designated as the facility control center which shall be constantly attended by staff personnel. All such signals shall produce both an audible signal and visual display at the facility control center indicating the building, floor zone or other designated area from which the signal originated in accordance with Section 907.6.4.

All local detention facilities within the scope of Section 6031.4 of the Penal Code shall have a automatic smoke detection system. A manual fire alarm-initiating device shall be installed in all guard control stations and shall be capable of alerting personnel in a central control point to the presence of fire or smoke within the facility.

907.2.6.4 Large family day-care. Every large family day-care home shall be provided with at least one manual fire alarm box at a location approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Such device shall actuate a fire alarm signal, which shall be audible throughout the facility at a minimum level of 15 dB above ambient noise level. These devices need not be interconnected to any other fire alarm device, have a control unit or be electrically supervised or provided with emergency power. Such device or devices shall be attached to the structure and must be a device that is listed and approved by the Office of the State Fire Marshal.

[F] 907.2.7 Group M. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group M occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The combined Group M occupant load of all floors is 500 or more persons.
2. The Group M occupant load is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest level of exit discharge.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in covered or open mall buildings complying with Section 402.
2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will automatically activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler waterflow.

[F] 907.2.7.1 Occupant notification. During times that the building is occupied, the initiation of a signal from a manual fire alarm box or from a waterflow switch shall not be required to activate the alarm notification appliances when an alarm signal is activated at a constantly attended location from which evacuation instructions shall be initiated over an emergency voice/ alarm communication system installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

[F] 907.2.8 Group R-1. Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-1 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.8.1 through 907.2.8.3.

[F] 907.2.8.1 Manual fire alarm system. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R- 1 occupancies.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two stories in height where all individual sleeping units and contiguous attic and crawl spaces to those units are separated from each other and public or common areas by at least 1-hour fire partitions and

each individual sleeping unit has an exit directly to a public way, egress court or yard.

2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required throughout the building when all of the following conditions are met:
 - 2.1. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2;
 - 2.2. The notification appliances will activate upon sprinkler waterflow; and
 - 2.3. At least one manual fire alarm box is installed at an approved location.

[F] 907.2.8.2 Automatic smoke detection system. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed throughout all interior corridors serving sleeping units.

Exception: An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving sleeping units and where each sleeping unit has a means of egress door opening directly to an exit or to an exterior exit access that leads directly to an exit.

[F] 907.2.8.3 Smoke alarms. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

[F] 907.2.9 Group R-2 and R-2.1. Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-2 and R-2.1 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.9.1 and 907.2.9.4.

[F] 907.2.9.1 Manual fire alarm system. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-2 occupancies where:

1. Any dwelling unit or sleeping unit is located three or more stories above the lowest level of exit discharge;
2. Any dwelling unit or sleeping unit is located more than one story below the highest level of exit discharge of exits serving the dwelling unit or sleeping unit; or
3. The building contains more than 16 dwelling units or sleeping units.
4. *Congregate residences with more than 16 occupants.*

Exceptions:

1. A fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two stories in height where all dwelling units or sleeping units and contiguous attic and crawl spaces are separated from each other and public or common areas by at least 1-hour fire partitions and each dwelling unit or sleeping unit has an exit directly to a public way, egress court or yard.

2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and the occupant notification appliances will automatically activate throughout the notification zones upon a sprinkler waterflow.
3. A fire alarm system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving dwelling units and are protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, provided that dwelling units either have a means of egress door opening directly to an exterior exit access that leads directly to the exits or are served by open-ended corridors designed in accordance with Section 1027.6, Exception 3.

[F] 907.2.9.2 Smoke alarms. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

[F] 907.2.9.3 Group R-2 college and university buildings. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-2 occupancies operated by a college or university for student or staff housing in all of the following locations:

1. Common spaces outside of dwelling units and sleeping units.
2. Laundry rooms, mechanical equipment rooms and storage rooms.
3. All interior corridors serving sleeping units or dwelling units.

Exception: An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving sleeping units or dwelling units and where each sleeping unit or dwelling unit either has a means of egress door opening directly to an exterior exit access that leads directly to an exit or a means of egress door opening directly to an exit.

Required smoke alarms in dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 occupancies operated by a college or university for student or staff housing shall be interconnected with the fire alarm system in accordance with NFPA 72.

907.2.9.4 Licensed Group R-2.1 occupancies. *Licensed Group R-2.1 occupancies housing more than six nonambulatory, elderly clients shall be provided with an approved manual and automatic fire alarm system.*

Exceptions: *Buildings housing nonambulatory clients on the first story only and which are protected throughout by the following:*

1. *An approved and supervised automatic sprinkler system, as specified in Sections 903.3.1.1*

or 903.3.1.2, which upon activation will initiate the fire alarm system to notify all occupants.

2. *A manual fire alarm system.*
3. *Smoke alarms required by Section 907.2.11.*

907.2.9.4.1 Smoke alarms. *Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.*

[F] 907.2.10 Group R-4. Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-4 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.10.1 through 907.2.10.3.

[F] 907.2.10.1 Manual fire alarm system. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-4 occupancies.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two stories in height where all individual sleeping units and contiguous attic and crawl spaces to those units are separated from each other and public or common areas by at least 1-hour fire partitions and each individual sleeping unit has an exit directly to a public way, egress court or yard.
2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required throughout the building when the following conditions are met:
 - 2.1. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2;
 - 2.2. The notification appliances will activate upon sprinkler waterflow; and
 - 2.3. At least one manual fire alarm box is installed at an approved location.
3. Manual fire alarm boxes in resident or patient sleeping areas shall not be required at *exits* where located at all nurses' control stations or other constantly attended staff locations, provided such stations are visible and continuously accessible and that the distances of travel required in Section 907.4.2.1 are not exceeded.

[F] 907.2.10.2 Automatic smoke detection system. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in corridors, waiting areas open to corridors and habitable spaces other than sleeping units and kitchens.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke detection in habitable spaces is not required where the facility is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving sleeping units and where each sleeping unit has a means of egress door opening directly to an exit or to an exterior exit access that leads directly to an exit.

[F] 907.2.10.3 Smoke alarms. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

[F] 907.2.11 Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms. Listed single- and multiple-station smoke alarms complying with UL 217 shall be installed in accordance with Sections 907.2.11.1 through 907.2.11.8 and NFPA 72.

Exception: For Group R occupancies. A fire alarm system with smoke detectors located in accordance with this section may be installed in lieu of smoke alarms. Upon actuation of the detector, only those notification appliances in the dwelling unit or guest room where the detector is actuated shall activate.

[F] 907.2.11.1 Group R-1. Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in all of the following locations in Group R-1:

1. In sleeping areas.
2. In every room in the path of the means of egress from the sleeping area to the door leading from the sleeping unit.
3. In each story within the sleeping unit, including basements. For sleeping units with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full story below the upper level.

See Section 907.2.11.8 for specific location requirements.

[F] 907.2.11.2 Groups R-2, R-2.1, R-3, R-3.1 and R-4 and I-4. Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed and maintained in Groups R-2, R-2.1, R-3, R-3.1 and R-4 regardless of occupant load at all of the following locations:

1. On the ceiling or wall outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of bedrooms.
2. In each room used for sleeping purposes.
3. In each story within a dwelling unit, including basements but not including crawl spaces and uninhabitable attics. In dwellings or dwelling units with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full story below the upper level.

4. In a Group R-3.1 occupancies, in addition to the above, smoke alarms shall be provided throughout the habitable areas of the dwelling unit except kitchens.

See Section 907.2.11.8 for specific location requirements.

907.2.11.2.1 Group I-4 occupancies. Large family day-care homes shall be equipped with State Fire Marshal approved and listed single station residential type smoke alarms.

907.2.11.2.2 Group R-3.1. In all facilities housing a bedridden client, smoke alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring when such wiring is served from a commercial source and shall be equipped with a battery backup. Smoke alarms shall be electrically interconnected so as to cause all smoke alarms to sound a distinctive alarm signal upon actuation of any single smoke alarm. Such alarm signal shall be audible throughout the facility at a minimal level of 15 dB above ambient noise level. These devices need not be interconnected to any other fire alarm device, have a control unit, or be electrically supervised or provided with emergency power.

907.2.11.2.3 Smoke alarms. Smoke alarms shall be tested and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Smoke alarms that no longer function shall be replaced.

[F] 907.2.11.3 Installation near cooking appliances. See Section 907.2.11.8.

[F] 907.2.11.4 Installation near bathrooms. See Section 907.2.11.8.

[F] 907.2.11.5 Interconnection. Where more than one smoke alarm is required to be installed within an individual dwelling unit or sleeping unit in Group R occupancies, the smoke alarms shall be interconnected in such a manner that the activation of one alarm will activate all of the alarms in the individual unit. Physical interconnection of smoke alarms shall not be required where listed wireless alarms are installed and all alarms sound upon activation of one alarm. The alarm shall be clearly audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed.

[F] 907.2.11.6 Power source. In new construction, and in newly classified Group R-3.1 occupancies, required smoke alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source and shall be equipped with a battery backup. Smoke alarms with integral strobes that are not equipped with battery backup shall be connected to an emergency electrical system in accordance with Section 2702. Smoke alarms shall emit a signal when the batteries are low. Wiring shall be permanent and with-

[F] 907.2.13.2 Fire department communication system. Where a wired communication system is approved in lieu of an emergency responder radio coverage system in accordance with Section 510 of the *California Fire Code*, the wired fire department communication system shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and shall operate between a fire command center complying with Section 911, elevators, elevator lobbies, emergency and standby power rooms, fire pump rooms, areas of refuge and inside interior exit stairways. The fire department communication device shall be provided at each floor level within the interior exit stairway.

[F] 907.2.14 Atriums connecting more than two stories. A fire alarm system shall be installed in occupancies with an atrium that connects more than two stories, with smoke detection installed in locations required by a rational analysis in Section 909.4 and in accordance with the system operation requirements in Section 909.17. The system shall be activated in accordance with Section 907.5. Such occupancies in Group A, E or M shall be provided with an emergency voice/alarm communication system complying with the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2.

[F] 907.2.15 High-piled combustible storage areas. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed throughout high-piled combustible storage areas where required by Section 3206.5 of the *California Fire Code*.

[F] 907.2.16 Aerosol storage uses. Aerosol storage rooms and general-purpose warehouses containing aerosols shall be provided with an approved manual fire alarm system where required by the *California Fire Code*.

[F] 907.2.17 Lumber, wood structural panel and veneer mills. Lumber, wood structural panel and veneer mills shall be provided with a manual fire alarm system.

[F] 907.2.18 Underground buildings with smoke control systems. Where a smoke control system is installed in an underground building in accordance with this code, automatic smoke detectors shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.18.1.

[F] 907.2.18.1 Smoke detectors. Not fewer than one smoke detector listed for the intended purpose shall be installed in all of the following areas:

1. Mechanical equipment, electrical, transformer, telephone equipment, elevator machine or similar rooms.
2. Elevator lobbies.
3. The main return and exhaust air plenum of each air-conditioning system serving more than one story and located in a serviceable area downstream of the last duct inlet.
4. Each connection to a vertical duct or riser serving two or more floors from return air ducts or plenums of heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems, except that in Group R occupancies, a

listed smoke detector is allowed to be used in each return air riser carrying not more than 5,000 cfm (2.4 m³/s) and serving not more than 10 air-inlet openings.

[F] 907.2.18.2 Alarm required. Activation of the smoke control system shall activate an audible alarm at a constantly attended location.

[F] 907.2.19 Deep underground buildings. Where the lowest level of a structure is more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest level of exit discharge, the structure shall be equipped throughout with a manual fire alarm system, including an emergency voice/alarm communication system installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

[F] 907.2.20 Covered and open mall buildings. Where the total floor area exceeds 50,000 square feet (4645 m²) within either a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, an emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be provided. Emergency voice/alarm communication systems serving a mall, required or otherwise, shall be accessible to the fire department. The system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

[F] 907.2.21 Residential aircraft hangars. A minimum of one single-station smoke alarm shall be installed within a residential aircraft hangar as defined in Chapter 2 and shall be interconnected into the residential smoke alarm or other sounding device to provide an alarm which will be audible in all sleeping areas of the dwelling.

[F] 907.2.22 Airport traffic control towers. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be provided in airport control towers in accordance with Sections 907.2.22.1 and 907.2.22.2.

Exception: Audible appliances shall not be installed within the control tower cab.

[F] 907.2.22.1 Airport traffic control towers with multiple exits and automatic sprinklers. Airport traffic control towers with multiple exits and equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be provided with smoke detectors in all of the following locations:

1. Airport traffic control cab.
2. Electrical and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Airport terminal radar and electronics rooms.
4. Outside each opening into interior exit stairways.
5. Along the single means of egress permitted from observation levels.
6. Outside each opening into the single means of egress permitted from observation levels.

[F] 907.2.22.2 Other airport traffic control towers. Airport traffic control towers with a single exit or where sprinklers are not installed throughout shall be

provided with smoke detectors in all of the following locations:

1. Airport traffic control cab.
2. Electrical and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Airport terminal radar and electronics rooms.
4. Office spaces incidental to the tower operation.
5. Lounges for employees, including sanitary facilities.
6. Means of egress.
7. Accessible utility shafts.

[F] 907.2.23 Battery rooms. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed in areas containing stationary storage battery systems with a liquid capacity of more than 50 gallons (189 L).

907.2.24 Motion picture and television production studio sound stages and approved production facilities.

907.2.24.1 Sound stages-solid-ceiling sets and platforms. Where required by Chapter 48 of the California Fire Code, all interior solid-ceiling sets over 600 square feet (55.7 m²) in area, and platforms (when provided) over 600 square feet (55.7 m²) in area and which exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in height shall be protected by an approved heat detector system. Heat detectors shall be spaced 30 feet (9144 mm) on center or as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions. The fire alarm system shall be connected to an approved supervising station in accordance with Section 907.6.5 or a local alarm which will give an audible signal at a constantly attended location.

907.2.24.2 Production locations—solid-ceiling sets and platforms. Where required by Chapter 48 of the California Fire Code in buildings with existing fire protection systems and where production intends to construct solid-ceiling sets over 600 square feet (55.7 m²) in area, and platforms over 600 square feet (55.7 m²) in area and which exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in height shall be protected by an approved heat detector system. Heat detectors shall be spaced 30 feet (9144 mm) on center or as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions. The fire alarm system shall be connected to an approved supervising station in accordance with Section 907.6.6 or a local alarm which will give an audible signal at a constantly attended location.

907.2.24.3 Fire alarm control units. Fire alarm control units shall be California State Fire Marshal listed and shall be utilized in accordance with their listing. Control units are permitted to be temporarily supported by sets, platforms or pedestals.

907.2.24.4 Heat detectors.

907.2.24.4.1 Heat detection required by this section shall be defined as a portable system as it is intended to be reinstalled when platforms or sets are changed.

907.2.24.4.2 Heat detectors shall be secured to standard outlet boxes and are allowed to be temporarily supported by sets, platforms or pedestals.

907.2.24.4.3 Heat detectors shall be provided for solid-ceiling sets and platforms where required by Sections 4805.3 and 4811.14.

907.2.25 Group C occupancies (organized camps).

907.2.25.1 General. Every building and structure used or intended for sleeping purposes shall be provided with an automatic smoke detection system.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings and structures in existence and in operation prior to January 1, 1985.
2. Tents, tent structures and buildings and structures that do not exceed 25 ft (7620 mm) in any lateral dimensions and where such building or structure is not more than one story.

907.2.25.2 Camp fire alarm. Every organized camp shall provide and maintain audible appliances, or devices suitable for sounding a fire alarm. Such audible appliances or devices may be of any type acceptable to the enforcing agency provided they are distinctive in tone from all other signaling devices or systems and shall be audible throughout the camp premises. When an automatic fire alarm system is provided, as required by Section 450.6.6 of the California Building Code, all audible appliances required by this section shall be of the same type as that used in the automatic system.

907.2.26 Fixed-guideway and passenger rail transit systems fire alarm and communication systems.

907.2.26.1 General. Every fixed-guideway transit station shall be provided with an approved emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with NFPA 72. The emergency voice/alarm communication system, designed and installed so that damage to any one speaker will not render any paging zone of the system inoperative.

Exception: Open stations

907.2.26.2 System components. Each station fire alarm system shall consist of:

1. Fire alarm control unit at a location as permitted by the enforcing agency.
2. An alarm annunciator(s). The annunciator(s) shall be located at a point acceptable to the enforcing agency. The annunciator(s) shall indicate the type of device and general location of alarm. All alarm, supervisory and trouble signals shall be transmitted to the local annunciator(s) and the operations control center.
3. Manual fire alarm boxes shall be provided throughout passenger platforms and stations.

Exception: Two-way emergency communication reporting devices (emergency telephones) are allowed to be used in lieu of manual fire

alarm boxes as permitted by the enforcing agency. Such devices shall provide two-way communication between the operations control center and each device. Such devices shall be located as required for manual fire alarm boxes, and shall be distinctly identified by signs, coloring or other means acceptable to the enforcing agency.

4. Automatic smoke detectors in all ancillary spaces.

Exceptions:

1. Ancillary spaces protected by an approved fixed automatic extinguishing system; or
2. Ancillary spaces protected by quick-response sprinklers.

5. Automatic control of exiting components.

907.2.26.3 Emergency voice/alarm communication system. Each station shall be provided with an emergency voice/alarm communication system capable of transmitting voice, recorded or electronically generated textual messages to all areas of the station. The system(s) shall be configured such that the messages can be initiated from either the Emergency Management Panel (EMP) or the operations control center.

907.2.26.4 Emergency telephones. A dedicated two-way emergency communication phone system designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 shall be provided in all underground stations to facilitate direct communications for emergency response between remote locations and the EMP.

907.2.26.4.1 Remote emergency phones shall be located at ends of station platforms, each hose outlet connection and station valve rooms.

907.2.26.4.2 Provisions shall be made in the design of this two-way emergency communication phone system for extensions of the system to the next passenger station or guideway portal.

907.2.27 Winery caves. An approved manual fire alarm system conforming to the provisions of Section 907.2 shall be provided in all Type 3 winery caves.

907.2.28 Group L. A manual fire alarm system shall be installed throughout buildings containing Group L occupancies. When Group L occupancies are located in mixed use buildings, at least one manual fire alarm box shall be located in the Group L occupancy.

907.2.28.1 Group L occupancies located above the 10th story. Manual fire alarm boxes shall be required on each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier and at each exit above the 10th story.

907.2.29 Public school state funded construction projects for kindergarten through 12th grade - automatic fire alarm system requirements.

907.2.29.1 New public school campus. All occupancies shall be provided with an automatic fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system signal utilizing an emergency voice/alarm communication

system meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6. The provisions of this section shall apply to any public school project consisting of one or more buildings on a new school campus and receiving state funds pursuant to Leroy F. Greene School Facilities Act of 1998, California Education Code, Sections 17070.10 through 17079. For purposes of this section, new campus refers to a school site, where an application for construction of original buildings was made to the Division of the State Architect (DSA) on or after July 1, 2002.

Exceptions:

1. A relocatable building that is sited with the intent that it be at the site for less than three years and is sited upon a temporary foundation in a manner that is designed to permit easy removal. Also see CCR, Title 24, Part 1, California Administrative Code, Section 4-314 for definition of relocatable building.
2. Detached buildings designed and used for non-instructional purposes that meet the applicable requirements for that occupancy. Buildings would include, but not be limited to:

- Concession stand
- Press box
- Restroom facilities
- Shade structure
- Snack bar
- Storage building
- Ticket booth

3. Emergency voice/alarm communication systems meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall not be required in Group E occupancies with occupant loads of 100 or less, provided that activation of the manual fire alarm system initiates an approved occupant notification signal in accordance with Section 907.5.

907.2.29.2 New building on an existing public school campus. An automatic fire alarm system shall be provided in all occupancies. The provisions of this section shall apply to any public school project construction of a new building on an existing campus and receiving state funds pursuant to Leroy F. Green, School Facilities Act of 1998, California Education Code Sections 17070.10 through 17079. For purposes of this section, an existing campus refers to a school site, where an application for construction of original buildings was made to DSA prior to July 1, 2002.

Exceptions:

1. A construction project that has an estimated total cost of less than \$200,000.
2. A relocatable building that is sited with the intent that it be at the site for less than three years and is sited upon a temporary foundation in a manner that is designed to permit

easy removal. See California Administrative Code, Section 4-314 for definition of relocatable building.

3. Detached buildings designed and used for non-instructional purposes that meet the applicable requirements for that occupancy. Buildings would include, but not be limited to:

- Concession stand
- Press box
- Restroom facilities
- Shade structure
- Snack bar
- Storage building
- Ticket booth

907.2.29.3 Alterations to existing buildings on an existing public school campus. An automatic fire alarm system shall be provided for all portions within the scope of an alteration project. The provisions of this section shall apply to any public school project on an existing campus and receiving state funds pursuant to Leroy F. Green, School Facilities Act of 1998, California Education Code Sections 17070.10 through 17079. For purposes of this section, an existing campus refers to a school site, where an application for construction of original buildings was made to DSA prior to July 1, 2002.

Exceptions:

1. A construction project that has an estimated total cost of less than \$200,000.
2. A relocatable building that is sited with the intent that it be at the site for less than three years and is sited upon a temporary foundation in a manner that is designed to permit easy removal. See California Administrative Code, Section 4-314 for definition of relocatable building.
3. Detached buildings designed and used for non-instructional purposes that meet the applicable requirements for that occupancy. Buildings would include, but not be limited to:

- Concession Stand
- Press Box
- Restroom Facilities
- Shade Structure
- Snack Bar
- Storage Building
- Ticket Booth

907.2.29.4 Day-care, Group E or Group I-4 located on a public school campus. An automatic fire alarm system shall be provided in all buildings used as or containing a Group E or Group I-4 day-care.

[F] 907.3 Fire safety functions. Automatic fire detectors utilized for the purpose of performing fire safety functions shall be connected to the building's fire alarm control unit where a fire alarm system is installed. Detectors shall, upon actuation, perform the intended function and activate the alarm notification appliances or activate a visible and audible supervisory

signal at a constantly attended location. In buildings not equipped with a fire alarm system, the automatic fire detector shall be powered by normal electrical service and, upon actuation, perform the intended function. The detectors shall be located in accordance with NFPA 72.

[F] 907.3.1 Duct smoke detectors. Smoke detectors installed in ducts shall be listed for the air velocity, temperature and humidity present in the duct. Duct smoke detectors shall be connected to the building's fire alarm control unit when a fire alarm system is required by Section 907.2. Activation of a duct smoke detector shall initiate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly attended location and shall perform the intended fire safety function in accordance with this code and the California Mechanical Code. In facilities that are required to be monitored by a supervising station, duct smoke detectors shall report only as a supervisory signal and not as a fire alarm. They shall not be used as a substitute for required open area detection.

Exceptions:

1. The supervisory signal at a constantly attended location is not required where duct smoke detectors activate the building's alarm notification appliances.
2. In occupancies not required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, actuation of a smoke detector shall activate a visible and an audible signal in an approved location. Smoke detector trouble conditions shall activate a visible or audible signal in an approved location and shall be identified as air duct detector trouble.

907.3.2 Delayed egress locks. Where delayed egress locks or devices are installed on means of egress doors in accordance with Section 1010.1.9.7, an automatic smoke detection system shall be installed as required by that section and Section 1010.1.9.7.

907.3.2.1 In other than Groups I, R-2.1 and R-4 occupancies for single-story building, smoke detectors shall be installed at ceilings throughout all occupied areas and mechanical/electrical spaces. For multiple-story buildings, smoke detectors shall be installed throughout all occupied areas and mechanical/electrical spaces for the story where delayed egress devices are installed. Additional detectors are required on adjacent stories where occupants of those stories utilize the same means of egress.

Exception: Refer to Section 907.3.2.4 for Group A courthouse occupancies.

907.3.2.2 For Group I and R-2.1 occupancies. Smoke detectors shall be installed at ceilings throughout all occupied areas and mechanical/electrical spaces of smoke-compartments where delayed egress devices are installed. Additional detectors are required in adjacent smoke-compartments where occupants of those compartments utilize the same means of egress.

907.3.2.3 For Group R-4. Occupancies licensed as residential care facilities for the elderly, and housing cli-

[F] 907.5.2.2.5 Emergency power. Emergency voice/alarm communications systems shall be provided with emergency power in accordance with Section 2702. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 24 hours, as required in NFPA 72.

[F] 907.5.2.3 Visible alarms. Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.5.2.3.1 through 907.5.2.3.4.

Exceptions:

1. *In other than Group I-2 and I-2.1*, visible alarm notification appliances are not required in alterations, except where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.
2. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in *enclosed exit stairways, enclosed exit ramps, exterior exit stairs and exterior exit ramps*.
3. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in elevator cars.

[F] 907.5.2.3.1 Public use areas and common use areas. Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in public use areas and common use areas, including but not limited to:

1. *Band rooms*
2. *Classrooms*
3. *Corridors*
4. *Gymnasiums*
5. *Lobbies*
6. *Meeting rooms*
7. *Multipurpose rooms*
8. *Music practice rooms*
9. *Occupational shops*
10. *Occupied rooms where ambient noise impairs hearing of the fire alarm*
11. *Sanitary facilities including restrooms, bathrooms and shower rooms*

Exception: Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the notification appliance circuits serving the employee work areas shall be initially designed with not less than 20-percent spare capacity to account for the potential of adding visible notification appliances in the future to accommodate hearing-impaired employee(s).

[F] 907.5.2.3.2 Groups R-1 and R-2.1. Group R-1 and R-2.1 dwelling units or sleeping units in accordance with Table 907.5.2.3.2 shall be provided with a visible alarm notification appliance, activated by both the in-room smoke alarm and the building fire alarm system.

**[F] TABLE 907.5.2.3.2
VISIBLE ALARMS**

NUMBER OF SLEEP UNITS	SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS WITH VISIBLE ALARMS
6 to 25	2
26 to 50	4
51 to 75	7
76 to 100	9
101 to 150	12
151 to 200	14
201 to 300	17
301 to 400	20
401 to 500	22
501 to 1,000	5% of total
1,001 and over	50 plus 3 for each 100 over 1,000

[SFM] Also see Chapter 11B, Section 11B-224.4 and Table 11B-224.4.

[F] 907.5.2.3.3 Group R-2. In Group R-2 occupancies required by Section 907 to have a fire alarm system, all dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided with the capability to support visible alarm notification appliances in accordance with NFPA 72. Such capability shall be permitted to include the potential for future interconnection of the building fire alarm system with the unit smoke alarms, replacement of audible appliances with combination audible/visible appliances, or future extension of the existing wiring from the unit smoke alarm locations to required locations for visible appliances.

907.5.2.3.4 Groups R-2.1, R-3.1 and R-4. *Protective social care facilities which house persons who are hearing impaired, shall be provided with notification appliances for the hearing impaired installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and which shall activated upon initiation of the fire alarm system or the smoke alarms.*

907.5.2.4 Group E schools. *One audible alarm notification appliance shall be mounted on the exterior of a buildings to alert occupants at each playground area.*

907.5.2.5 Groups I-2 and I-2.1. *Audible notification appliances shall be used in nonpatient areas. Visible appliances are allowed to be used in lieu of audible appliances in patient occupied areas. Audible appliances located in patient areas shall be only chimes or similar sounding appliances for alerting staff.*

In occupancies housing nonambulatory persons where restraint is practiced, staff and attendants shall be provided and housed or located in such a manner that such supervisory personnel will also be alerted upon activation of the fire alarm system or any detector required by this section.

[F] 907.6 Installation and monitoring. A fire alarm system shall be installed and monitored in accordance with Sections 907.6.1 through 907.6.6.2 and NFPA 72.

[F] 907.6.1 Wiring. Wiring shall comply with the requirements of the California Electrical Code and NFPA 72.

Wireless protection systems utilizing radio-frequency transmitting devices shall comply with the special requirements for supervision of low-power wireless systems in NFPA 72.

907.6.1.1 High-rise buildings. *Wiring for fire alarm signaling line circuits, initiating circuits and notification circuits in high-rise buildings shall be in accordance with the following:*

1. Class A in accordance with NFPA 72.

Exception: *Initiating circuits which serve only a single initiating device.*

2. Enclosed in continuous metallic raceways in accordance with the California Electrical Code.

Exception: *Metallic cable (MC) shall be permitted for fire alarm notification circuits where continuous metallic raceways are not required for survivability.*

[F] 907.6.2 Power supply. The primary and secondary power supply for the fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 72.

Exception: Back-up power for single-station and multiple-station smoke alarms as required in Section 907.2.11.4.

[F] 907.6.3 Initiating device identification. The fire alarm system shall identify the specific initiating device address, location, device type, floor level where applicable and status including indication of normal, alarm, trouble and supervisory status, as appropriate.

Exceptions:

1. Fire alarm systems in single-story buildings less than 22,500 square feet (2090 m²) in area.
2. Fire alarm systems that only include manual fire alarm boxes, waterflow initiating devices and not more than 10 additional alarm-initiating devices.
3. Special initiating devices that do not support individual device identification.
4. Fire alarm systems or devices that are replacing existing equipment.

[F] 907.6.3.1 Annunciation. The initiating device status shall be annunciated at an approved on-site location.

[F] 907.6.4 Zones. *Fire alarm systems shall be divided into zones where required by this section. For the purposes of annunciation and notification, zoning shall be in accordance with the following:*

1. *Where the fire-protective signaling system serves more than one building, each building shall be considered as a separate zone.*
2. *Each floor of a building shall be considered as a separate zone.*
3. *Each section of floor of a building that is separated by fire walls or by horizontal exits shall be considered as a separate zone.*

4. Each zone shall not exceed 22,500 square feet (2090 m²). The length of any zone shall not exceed 300 feet (91 440 mm) in any direction.

Exception: Automatic sprinkler system zones shall not exceed the area permitted by NFPA 13.

5. *For Group I-3 occupancies each cell complex shall be considered a separate zone.*
6. *For Group H and L occupancies above the 10th story, each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier shall be considered a separate zone.*
7. *Annunciation shall be further divided into zones where deemed necessary by the enforcing agency.*

907.6.4.1 Annunciation. *Alarm, supervisory and trouble signals shall be annunciated in the main control unit by means of an audible signal and a visual display in accordance with NFPA 72. Identification of the type of alarm and supervisory initiating devices, such as manual, automatic, sprinkler waterflow, sprinkler valve supervisory, fire-pump supervisory, etc., shall be separately indicated.*

Exception: *Group R-3 occupancies.*

[F] 907.6.4.1.1 Annunciator panel. *An annunciator panel complying with Section 907.6.4.1 and the associated controls shall be provided in an approved remote location where deemed necessary by the enforcing agency. The visual zone indication shall lock in until the system is reset and shall not be canceled by the operation of an audible-alarm silencing switch.*

[F] 907.6.4.2 High-rise buildings. *In high-rise buildings and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, a separate zone by floor shall be provided for each of the following types of alarm-initiating devices where provided:*

1. Smoke detectors.
2. Sprinkler waterflow devices.
3. Manual fire alarm boxes.
4. Other approved types of automatic fire detection devices or suppression systems.

907.6.4.3 High-rise buildings zoning annunciator panel. *In high-rise buildings, a zoning annunciator panel shall be provided in the Fire Command Center. This panel shall not be combined with the Firefighter Smoke Control Panel unless approved. Panel shall be in matrix format or an approved equivalent configuration. All indicators shall be based upon positive confirmation. The panel shall include the following features at a minimum:*

1. *Fire alarm initiating devices with individual annunciation per floor for manual fire alarm boxes, area smoke detectors, elevator lobby smoke detectors, duct smoke detectors, heat*

**TABLE 1006.2.1
SPACES WITH ONE EXIT OR EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY**

OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM OCCUPANT LOAD OF SPACE	MAXIMUM COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL DISTANCE (feet)		
		Without Sprinkler System (feet)		With Sprinkler System (feet)
		Occupant Load		
		OL ≤ 30	OL > 30	
A ^c , E, M	49	75	75	75 ^a
B	49	100	75	100 ^a
F	49	75	75	100 ^a
H-1, H-2, H-3	3	NP	NP	25 ^b
H-4, H-5	10	NP	NP	75 ^b
I-2 ^d , I-2.1, I-4	10	NP	NP	75 ^a
I-3	10	NP	NP	100 ^a
R-1	10	NP	NP	75 ^a
R-2	10	NP	NP	125 ^a
R-2.1	10	NP	NP	75
R-3 ^c , R-3.1 ^e	10	NP	NP	125 ^{a, g}
R-4 ^c	10	NP	NP	125 ^{a, g}
S ^f	29	100	75	100 ^a
U	49	100	75	75 ^a
L	See Section 453.6.1			

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NP = Not Permitted.

- a. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.
- b. Group H occupancies equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
- c. For a room or space used for assembly purposes having fixed seating, see Section 1029.8.
- d. For the travel distance limitations in Group I-2 or I-2.1, see Section 407.4.
- e. The length of common path of egress travel distance in a Group R-3 occupancy located in a mixed occupancy building or within a Group R-3 or R-4 congregate living facility.
- f. The length of common path of egress travel distance in a Group S-2 open parking garage shall be not more than 100 feet.
- g. For the travel distance limitations in Group R-3 and R-4 equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3, see Section 1006.2.2.6.
- h. For holding cells, see Section 408.3.11.

1006.2.2.5 Vehicular ramps. Vehicular ramps shall not be considered as an exit access ramp unless pedestrian facilities are provided.

1006.2.2.6 Group R-3 and R-4. Where Group R-3 occupancies are permitted by Section 903.2.8 to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3, the exit access travel distance for Group R-3 shall not be more than 125 feet. Where Group R-4 occupancies are permitted by Section 903.2.8 to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3, the exit access travel distance for Group R-4 shall not be more than 75 feet.

1006.2.2.7 Large family day-care home. Every story or basement of a large family day-care home shall be provided with two exits which are remotely located from each other. Every required exit shall be of a size to permit the installation of a door not less than 32 inches (813 mm) in clear width and not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2,032 mm) in height. A manually operated horizontal sliding door may be used as one of the two required exits.

Where basements are used for day-care purposes, one of the two required exits shall provide access directly to the exterior without entering the first story. The second exit from the basement may either pass through the story above or exit directly to the exterior.

Rooms used for day-care purposes shall not be located above the first story.

Exception: Buildings equipped with an automatic sprinkler system throughout and which have at least one of the required exits providing access directly to the exterior. NFPA 13R may be used in large family day-care homes. The sprinkler omissions of NFPA 13R shall not apply unless approved by the enforcing agency.

Exit doors, including manually operated horizontal sliding doors, shall be openable from the inside without use of a key or any special knowledge or effort.

Tables 1006.3.2(1) and 1006.3.2(2) are not applicable to this occupancy classification.

MEANS OF EGRESS

1006.3 Egress from stories or occupied roofs. The means of egress system serving any story or occupied roof shall be provided with the number of exits or access to exits based on the aggregate occupant load served in accordance with this section. The path of egress travel to an exit shall not pass through more than one adjacent story.

Each story above the second story of a building shall have not less than one interior or exterior exit stairway, or interior or exterior exit ramp. Where three or more exits or access to exits are required, not less than 50 percent of the required exits shall be interior or exterior exit stairways or ramps.

Exceptions:

1. Interior exit stairways and interior exit ramps are not required in open parking garages where the means of egress serves only the open parking garage.
2. Interior exit stairways and interior exit ramps are not required in outdoor facilities where all portions of the means of egress are essentially open to the outside.

1006.3.1 Egress based on occupant load. Each story and occupied roof shall have the minimum number of independent exits, or access to exits, as specified in Table 1006.3.1. A single exit or access to a single exit shall be permitted in accordance with Section 1006.3.2. The required number of exits, or exit access stairways or ramps providing access to exits, from any story or occupied roof shall be maintained until arrival at the exit discharge or a public way.

**TABLE 1006.3.1
MINIMUM NUMBER OF EXITS OR
ACCESS TO EXITS PER STORY**

OCCUPANT LOAD PER STORY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF EXITS OR ACCESS TO EXITS FROM STORY
1-500	2
501-1,000	3
More than 1,000	4

1006.3.2 Single exits. A single exit or access to a single exit shall be permitted from any story or occupied roof where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The occupant load, number of dwelling units and common path of egress travel distance do not exceed the values in Table 1006.3.2(1) or 1006.3.2(2).

2. Rooms, areas and spaces, *at the level of exit discharge*, complying with Section 1006.2.1 with exits that discharge directly to the exterior, are permitted to have one exit or access to a single exit.
3. Parking garages where vehicles are mechanically parked shall be permitted to have one exit or access to a single exit.
4. Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies shall be permitted to have one exit or access to a single exit.
5. Individual single-story or multistory dwelling units shall be permitted to have a single exit or access to a single exit from the dwelling unit provided that both of the following criteria are met:

- 5.1. The dwelling unit complies with Section 1006.2.1 as a space with one means of egress.
- 5.2. Either the exit from the dwelling unit discharges directly to the exterior at the level of exit discharge, or the exit access outside the dwelling unit's entrance door provides access to not less than two approved independent exits.

1006.3.2.1 Mixed occupancies. Where one exit, or exit access stairway or ramp providing access to exits at other stories, is permitted to serve individual stories, mixed occupancies shall be permitted to be served by single exits provided each individual occupancy complies with the applicable requirements of Table 1006.3.2(1) or 1006.3.2(2) for that occupancy. Where applicable, cumulative occupant loads from adjacent occupancies shall be considered in accordance with the provisions of Section 1004.1. In each story of a mixed occupancy building, the maximum number of occupants served by a single exit shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the calculated number of occupants of the space divided by the allowable number of occupants indicated in Table 1006.3.2(2) for each occupancy does not exceed one. Where dwelling units are located on a story with other occupancies, the actual number of dwelling units divided by four plus the ratio from the other occupancy does not exceed one.

**TABLE 1006.3.2(1)
STORIES WITH ONE EXIT OR ACCESS TO ONE EXIT FOR R-2 AND R-3 OCCUPANCIES**

STORY	OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF DWELLING UNITS	MAXIMUM COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL DISTANCE
Basement, first, second or third story above grade plane	R-2 ^{a, b}	4 dwelling units	125 feet
	R-3 ^a	NA	NA
Fourth story above grade plane and higher	R-3 ^a	NA	125 feet

For SI: 1 foot = 3048 mm.

NP = Not Permitted.

NA = Not Applicable.

- a. Buildings classified as Group R-2 equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and provided with emergency escape and rescue openings in accordance with Section 1030.
- b. This table is used for R-2 occupancies consisting of dwelling units. For R-2 occupancies consisting of sleeping units, use Table 1006.3.2(2).

1010.1.3.1 Location of applied forces. Forces shall be applied to the latch side of the door.

1010.1.4 Special doors. Special doors and security grilles shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1010.1.4.1 through 1010.1.4.4.

1010.1.4.1 Revolving doors. Revolving doors shall comply with the following:

1. Revolving doors shall comply with BHMA A156.27 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.
2. Each revolving door shall be capable of breakout in accordance with BHMA A156.27 and shall provide an aggregate width of not less than 36 inches (914 mm).
3. A revolving door shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the foot or top of stairways or escalators. A dispersal area shall be provided between the stairways or escalators and the revolving doors.
4. The revolutions per minute (rpm) for a revolving door shall not exceed the maximum rpm as specified in BHMA A156.27. Manual revolving doors shall comply with Table 1010.1.4.1(1). Automatic or power-operated revolving doors shall comply with Table 1010.1.4.1(2).
5. An emergency stop switch shall be provided near each entry point of power or automatic operated revolving door within 48 inches (1220 mm) of the door and between 24 inches (610 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) above the floor. The activation area of the emergency stop switch button shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter and shall be red.
6. Each revolving door shall have a side-hinged swinging door that complies with Section 1010.1 in the same wall and within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the revolving door.
7. Revolving doors shall not be part of an accessible route required by Section 1009 and *Chapter 11A or 11B*.

**TABLE 1010.1.4.1(1)
MAXIMUM DOOR SPEED MANUAL REVOLVING DOORS**

REVOLVING DOOR MAXIMUM NOMINAL DIAMETER (FT-IN)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE REVOLVING DOOR SPEED (RPM)
6-0	12
7-0	11
8-0	10
9-0	9
10-0	8

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**TABLE 1010.1.4.1(2)
MAXIMUM DOOR SPEED AUTOMATIC OR POWER-OPERATED REVOLVING DOORS**

REVOLVING DOOR MAXIMUM NOMINAL DIAMETER (FT-IN)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE REVOLVING DOOR SPEED (RPM)
8-0	7.2
9-0	6.4
10-0	5.7
11-0	5.2
12-0	4.8
12-6	4.6
14-0	4.1
16-0	3.6
17-0	3.4
18-0	3.2
20-0	2.9
24-0	2.4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

1010.1.4.1.1 Egress component. A revolving door used as a component of a means of egress shall comply with Section 1010.1.4.1 and the following three conditions:

1. Revolving doors shall not be given credit for more than 50 percent of the minimum width or required capacity.
2. Each revolving door shall be credited with a capacity based on not more than a 50-person occupant load.
3. Each revolving door shall provide for egress in accordance with BHMA A156.27 with a breakout force of not more than 130 pounds (578 N).

1010.1.4.1.2 Other than egress component. A revolving door used as other than a component of a means of egress shall comply with Section 1010.1.4.1. The breakout force of a revolving door not used as a component of a means of egress shall not be more than 180 pounds (801 N).

Exception: A breakout force in excess of 180 pounds (801 N) is permitted if the collapsing force is reduced to not more than 130 pounds (578 N) when not less than one of the following conditions is satisfied:

1. There is a power failure or power is removed to the device holding the door wings in position.
2. There is an actuation of the automatic sprinkler system where such system is provided.

3. There is an actuation of a smoke detection system that is installed in accordance with Section 907 to provide coverage in areas within the building that are within 75 feet (22 860 mm) of the revolving doors.
4. There is an actuation of a manual control switch, in an approved location and clearly identified, that reduces the breakout force to not more than 130 pounds (578 N).

1010.1.4.2 Power-operated doors. Where means of egress doors are operated or assisted by power, the design shall be such that in the event of power failure, the door is capable of being opened manually to permit means of egress travel or closed where necessary to safeguard means of egress. The forces required to open these doors manually shall not exceed those specified in Section 1010.1.3, except that the force to set the door in motion shall not exceed 50 pounds (220 N). The door shall be capable of swinging open from any position to the full width of the opening in which such door is installed when a force is applied to the door on the side from which egress is made. Power-operated swinging doors, power-operated sliding doors and power-operated folding doors shall comply with BHMA A156.10. Power-assisted swinging doors and low-energy power-operated swinging doors shall comply with BHMA A156.19.

Exceptions:

1. Occupancies in Group I-3.
2. Horizontal sliding doors complying with Section 1010.1.4.3.
3. For a biparting door in the emergency breakout mode, a door leaf located within a multiple-leaf opening shall be exempt from the minimum 32-inch (813 mm) single-leaf requirement of Section 1010.1.1, provided a minimum 32-inch (813 mm) clear opening is provided when the two biparting leaves meeting in the center are broken out.

1010.1.4.3 Special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding doors. In other than Group H occupancies, special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies permitted to be a component of a means of egress in accordance with Exception 6 to Section 1010.1.2 shall comply with all of the following criteria:

1. The doors shall be power operated and shall be capable of being operated manually in the event of power failure.
2. The doors shall be openable by a simple method from both sides without special knowledge or effort.
3. The force required to operate the door shall not exceed 30 pounds (133 N) to set the door in motion and 15 pounds (67 N) to close or open the door to the minimum required width.

4. The door shall be openable with a force not to exceed 15 pounds (67 N) when a force of 250 pounds (1100 N) is applied perpendicular to the door adjacent to the operating device.
5. The door assembly shall comply with the applicable fire protection rating and, where rated, shall be self-closing or automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3, shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 80 and shall comply with Section 716.
6. The door assembly shall have an integrated standby power supply.
7. The door assembly power supply shall be electrically supervised.
8. The door shall open to the minimum required width within 10 seconds after activation of the operating device.

1010.1.4.4 Security grilles. In Groups B, F, M and S, horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles are permitted at the main exit and shall be openable from the inside without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort during periods that the space is occupied. The grilles shall remain secured in the full-open position during the period of occupancy by the general public. Where two or more means of egress are required, not more than one-half of the exits or exit access doorways shall be equipped with horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles.

1010.1.4.4.1 Special provisions—school classrooms. *School classrooms constructed after January 1, 1990, not equipped with automatic sprinkler systems, which have metal grilles or bars on all their windows and do not have at least two exit doors within 3 feet (914 mm) of each end of the classroom opening to the exterior of the building or to a common hallway used for evacuation purposes, shall have an inside release for the grilles or bars on at least one window farthest from the exit doors. The window or windows with the inside release shall be clearly marked as emergency exits.*

1010.1.5 Floor elevation. There shall be a floor or landing on each side of a door. Such floor or landing shall be at the same elevation on each side of the door. Landings shall be level except for exterior landings, which are permitted to have a slope not to exceed 0.25 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

Exceptions:

1. Doors serving individual dwelling units in Groups R-2 and R-3 where the following apply:
 - 1.1. A door is permitted to open at the top step of an interior flight of stairs, provided the door does not swing over the top step.
 - 1.2. Screen doors and storm doors are permitted to swing over stairs or landings.
2. Exterior doors as provided for in Section 1003.5, Exception 1, and Section 1022.2, which are not on an accessible route.

edge shall be protected by guards installed in accordance with Section 1015.

1011.14 Alternating tread devices. Alternating tread devices are limited to an element of a means of egress in buildings of Groups F, H and S from a mezzanine not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) in area and that serves not more than five occupants; in buildings of Group I-3 from a guard tower, observation station or control room not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) in area and for access to unoccupied roofs. Alternating tread devices used as a means of egress shall not have a rise greater than 20 feet (6096 mm) between floor levels or landings.

1011.14.1 Handrails of alternating tread devices. Handrails shall be provided on both sides of alternating tread devices and shall comply with Section 1014.

1011.14.2 Treads of alternating tread devices. Alternating tread devices shall have a minimum tread depth of 5 inches (127 mm), a minimum projected tread depth of 8½ inches (216 mm), a minimum tread width of 7 inches (178 mm) and a maximum riser height of 9½ inches (241 mm). The tread depth shall be measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projections of adjacent treads. The riser height shall be measured vertically between the leading edges of adjacent treads. The riser height and tread depth provided shall result in an angle of ascent from the horizontal of between 50 and 70 degrees (0.87 and 1.22 rad). The initial tread of the device shall begin at the same elevation as the platform, landing or floor surface.

Exception: Alternating tread devices used as an element of a means of egress in buildings from a mezzanine area not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) in area that serves not more than five occupants shall have a minimum tread depth of 3 inches (76 mm) with a minimum projected tread depth of 10½ inches (267 mm). The rise to the next alternating tread surface shall not exceed 8 inches (203 mm).

1011.15 Ships ladders. Ships ladders are permitted to be used in *lifeguard towers not open to the public* and Group I-3 as a component of a means of egress to and from control rooms or elevated facility observation stations not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) with not more than three occupants and for access to unoccupied roofs. The minimum clear width at and below the handrails shall be 20 inches (508 mm).

1011.15.1 Handrails of ships ladders. Handrails shall be provided on both sides of ships ladders.

1011.15.2 Treads of ships ladders. Ships ladders shall have a minimum tread depth of 5 inches (127 mm). The tread shall be projected such that the total of the tread depth plus the nosing projection is not less than 8½ inches (216 mm). The maximum riser height shall be 9½ inches (241 mm).

1011.16 Ladders. Permanent ladders shall not serve as a part of the means of egress from occupied spaces within a build-

ing. Permanent ladders shall be permitted to provide access to the following areas:

1. Spaces frequented only by personnel for maintenance, repair or monitoring of equipment.
2. Nonoccupiable spaces accessed only by catwalks, crawl spaces, freight elevators or very narrow passageways.
3. Raised areas used primarily for purposes of security, life safety or fire safety including, but not limited to, observation galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers or lifeguard stands.
4. Elevated levels in Group U not open to the general public.
5. Nonoccupied roofs that are not required to have stairway access in accordance with Section 1011.12.1.
6. Ladders shall be constructed in accordance with Section 304.3 of the *California Mechanical Code*.

SECTION 1012 RAMPS

[DSA-AC] In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 11B-405, as applicable.

1012.1 Scope. The provisions of this section shall apply to ramps used as a component of a means of egress.

Exceptions:

1. Ramped aisles within assembly rooms or spaces shall comply with the provisions in Section 1029.
2. Curb ramps shall comply with *Chapter 11A or 11B, 11B-406, as applicable*.
3. Vehicle ramps in parking garages for pedestrian exit access shall not be required to comply with Sections 1012.3 through 1012.10 where they are not an accessible route serving accessible parking spaces, other required accessible elements or part of an accessible means of egress.

1012.2 Slope. Ramps used as part of a means of egress shall have a running slope not steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope). The slope of other pedestrian ramps shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in eight units horizontal (12.5-percent slope).

1012.3 Cross slope. The slope measured perpendicular to the direction of travel of a ramp shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

1012.4 Vertical rise. The rise for any ramp run shall be 30 inches (762 mm) maximum.

1012.5 Minimum dimensions. The minimum dimensions of means of egress ramps shall comply with Sections 1012.5.1 through 1012.5.3.

1012.5.1 Width and capacity. The minimum width and required capacity of a means of egress ramp shall be not less than that required for corridors by Section 1020.2. The clear width of a ramp between handrails, if provided, or other permissible projections shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.

1012.5.2 Headroom. The minimum headroom in all parts of the means of egress ramp shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm).

1012.5.3 Restrictions. Means of egress ramps shall not reduce in width in the direction of egress travel. Projections into the required ramp and landing width are prohibited. Doors opening onto a landing shall not reduce the clear width to less than 42 inches (1067 mm).

1012.6 Landings. Ramps shall have landings at the bottom and top of each ramp, points of turning, entrance, exits and at doors. Landings shall comply with Sections 1012.6.1 through 1012.6.5.

1012.6.1 Slope. Landings shall have a slope not steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in any direction. Changes in level are not permitted.

1012.6.2 Width. The landing width shall be not less than the width of the widest ramp run adjoining the landing.

1012.6.3 Length. The landing length shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. In Group R-2 and R-3 individual dwelling and sleeping units that are not required to be accessible in accordance with *Chapter 11A*, landings are permitted to be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.
2. Where the ramp is not a part of an accessible route, the length of the landing shall not be required to be more than 48 inches (1220 mm) in the direction of travel.

1012.6.4 Change in direction. Where changes in direction of travel occur at landings provided between ramp runs, the landing shall be 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm) minimum.

Exception: In Group R-2 and R-3 individual dwelling or sleeping units that are not required to be accessible in accordance with *Chapter 11A*, landings are permitted to be 36 inches by 36 inches (914 mm by 914 mm) minimum.

1012.6.5 Doorways. Where doorways are located adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearances required for accessibility are permitted to overlap the required landing area as specified in *Chapter 11A*, or *11B*, as applicable.

1012.7 Ramp construction. Ramps shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building, except that wood handrails shall be permitted for all types of construction.

1012.7.1 Ramp surface. The surface of ramps shall be of slip-resistant materials that are securely attached.

1012.7.2 Outdoor conditions. Outdoor ramps and outdoor approaches to ramps shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces.

1012.8 Handrails. Ramps with a rise greater than 6 inches (152 mm) shall have handrails on both sides. Handrails shall comply with Section 1014.

1012.9 Guards. Guards shall be provided where required by Section 1015 and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1015.

1012.10 Edge protection. Edge protection complying with Section 1012.10.1 or 1012.10.2 shall be provided on each side of ramp runs and at each side of ramp landings.

Exceptions:

1. Edge protection is not required on ramps that are not required to have handrails, provided they have flared sides that comply with *Chapter 11A* or *11B*.
2. Edge protection is not required on the sides of ramp landings serving an adjoining ramp run or stairway.
3. Edge protection is not required on the sides of ramp landings having a vertical dropoff of not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) within 10 inches (254 mm) horizontally of the required landing area.

1012.10.1 Curb, rail, wall or barrier. A curb, rail, wall or barrier shall be provided to serve as edge protection. A curb shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height. Barriers shall be constructed so that the barrier prevents the passage of a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere, where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (102 mm) of the floor or ground surface.

1012.10.2 Extended floor or ground surface. The floor or ground surface of the ramp run or landing shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of a handrail complying with Section 1014.

**SECTION 1013
EXIT SIGNS**

1013.1 Where required. Exits and exit access doors shall be marked by an approved exit sign readily visible from any direction of egress travel. The path of egress travel to exits and within exits shall be marked by readily visible exit signs to clearly indicate the direction of egress travel in cases where the exit or the path of egress travel is not immediately visible to the occupants. Intervening means of egress doors within exits shall be marked by exit signs. Exit sign placement shall be such that no point in an exit access corridor or exit passageway is more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) or the listed viewing distance for the sign, whichever is less, from the nearest visible exit sign.

Exceptions:

1. Exit signs are not required in rooms or areas that require only one exit or exit access.

3. Handrail brackets or balusters attached to the bottom surface of the handrail that do not project horizontally beyond the sides of the handrail within $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (38 mm) of the bottom of the handrail shall not be considered obstructions. For each $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension above 4 inches (102 mm), the vertical clearance dimension of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (38 mm) shall be permitted to be reduced by $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (3.2 mm).
4. Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with slopes not steeper than 1:20, the bottoms of the handrail gripping surfaces shall be permitted to be obstructed along their entire length where they are integral to crash rails or bumper guards.
5. Handrails serving stepped aisles or ramped aisles are permitted to be discontinuous in accordance with Section 1029.15.1.

1014.5 Fittings. Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.

1014.6 Handrail extensions. Handrails shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent flight of stairs or ramp run. Where handrails are not continuous between flights, the handrails shall extend horizontally not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the top riser and continue to slope for the depth of one tread beyond the bottom riser. At ramps where handrails are not continuous between runs, the handrails shall extend horizontally above the landing 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top and bottom of ramp runs. The extensions of handrails shall be in the same direction of the flights of stairs at stairways and the ramp runs at ramps.

Exceptions:

1. Handrails within a dwelling unit that is not required to be accessible need extend only from the top riser to the bottom riser.
2. Handrails serving aisles in rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes are permitted to comply with the handrail extensions in accordance with Section 1029.15.
3. Handrails for alternating tread devices and ships ladders are permitted to terminate at a location vertically above the top and bottom risers. Handrails for alternating tread devices are not required to be continuous between flights or to extend beyond the top or bottom risers.

1014.7 Clearance. Clear space between a handrail and a wall or other surface shall be not less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (38 mm). A handrail and a wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements.

1014.8 Projections. On ramps and on ramped aisles that are part of an accessible route, the clear width between handrails shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum. Projections into the required width of aisles, stairways and ramps at each side shall not exceed $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches (114 mm) at or below the handrail height. Projections into the required width shall not be limited above the minimum headroom height required in Section 1011.3. Projections due to intermediate handrails shall not

constitute a reduction in the egress width. Where a pair of intermediate handrails are provided within the stairway width without a walking surface between the pair of intermediate handrails and the distance between the pair of intermediate handrails is greater than 6 inches (152 mm), the available egress width shall be reduced by the distance between the closest edges of each such intermediate pair of handrails that is greater than 6 inches (152 mm).

In Group I-2 occupancy ramps required for exit access shall not be less than 8 ft in width and handrails are permitted to protrude $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches from the wall on both sides. Ramps used as exits and stairways used for the movement of bed and litter patients, the clear width between handrails shall be 44 inches (1118 mm) minimum.

[HCD 1-AC] In addition, projections shall comply with Chapter 11A, when applicable.

1014.9 Intermediate handrails. Stairways shall have intermediate handrails located in such a manner that all portions of the stairway minimum width or required capacity are within 30 inches (762 mm) of a handrail. On monumental stairs, handrails shall be located along the most direct path of egress travel.

SECTION 1015 GUARDS

1015.1 General. Guards shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1015.2 through 1015.7. Operable windows with sills located more than 72 inches (1829 mm) above finished grade or other surface below shall comply with Section 1015.8.

1015.2 Where required. Guards shall be located along open-sided walking surfaces, including mezzanines, equipment platforms, aisles, stairs, ramps and landings that are located more than 30 inches (762 mm) measured vertically to the floor or grade below at any point within 36 inches (914 mm) horizontally to the edge of the open side. Guards shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.8.

Exception: Guards are not required for the following locations:

1. On the loading side of loading docks or piers.
2. On the audience side of stages and raised platforms, including stairs leading up to the stage and raised platforms.
3. On raised stage and platform floor areas, such as runways, ramps and side stages used for entertainment or presentations.
4. At vertical openings in the performance area of stages and platforms.
5. At elevated walking surfaces appurtenant to stages and platforms for access to and utilization of special lighting or equipment.
6. Along vehicle service pits not accessible to the public.
7. In assembly seating areas at cross aisles in accordance with Section 1029.16.2.

1015.2.1 Glazing. Where glass is used to provide a guard or as a portion of the guard system, the guard shall comply with Section 2407. Where the glazing provided does not meet the strength and attachment requirements of Section 1607.8, complying guards shall be located along glazed sides of open-sided walking surfaces.

1015.3 Height. Required guards shall be not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) high, measured vertically as follows:

1. From the adjacent walking surfaces.
2. On stairways and stepped aisles, from the line connecting the leading edges of the tread nosings.
3. On ramps and ramped aisles, from the ramp surface at the guard.

Exceptions:

1. For occupancies in Group R-3, and within individual dwelling units in occupancies in Group R-2, guards on the open sides of stairs shall have a height not less than 34 inches (864 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the leading edges of the treads.
2. For occupancies in Group R-3, and within individual dwelling units in occupancies in Group R-2, where the top of the guard also serves as a handrail on the open sides of stairs, the top of the guard shall be not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the leading edges of the treads.
3. The guard height in assembly seating areas shall comply with Section 1029.16 as applicable.
4. Along alternating tread devices and ships ladders, guards where the top rail also serves as a handrail shall have height not less than 30 inches (762 mm) and not more than 34 inches (864 mm), measured vertically from the leading edge of the device tread nosing.

1015.4 Opening limitations. Required guards shall not have openings which allow passage of a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter from the walking surface to the required guard height.

Exceptions:

1. From a height of 36 inches (914 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm), guards shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere $4\frac{3}{8}$ inches (111 mm) in diameter.
2. The triangular openings at the open sides of a stair, formed by the riser, tread and bottom rail shall not allow passage of a sphere 6 inches (152 mm) in diameter.
3. At elevated walking surfaces for access to and use of electrical, mechanical or plumbing systems or equipment, guards shall not have openings which allow passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.
4. In areas that are not open to the public within occupancies in Group I-3, F, H or S, and for alternating

tread devices and ship ladders, guards shall not have openings which allow passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.

5. In assembly seating areas, guards required at the end of aisles in accordance with Section 1029.16.4 shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter up to a height of 26 inches (660 mm). From a height of 26 inches (660 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm) above the adjacent walking surfaces, guards shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter.
6. Within individual dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies, guards on the open sides of stairs shall not have openings which allow passage of a sphere $4\frac{3}{8}$ (111 mm) inches in diameter.
7. *In lifeguard towers not open to the public, guards shall not have openings which allow passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.*

1015.5 Screen porches. Porches and decks which are enclosed with insect screening shall be provided with guards where the walking surface is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below.

1015.6 Mechanical equipment, systems and devices. Guards shall be provided where various components that require service are located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof or grade below. The guard shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond each end of such components. The guard shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.

Exception: Guards are not required where permanent fall arrest/restraint anchorage connector devices that comply with ANSI/ASSE Z 359.1 are affixed for use during the entire roof covering lifetime. The devices shall be reevaluated for possible replacement when the entire roof covering is replaced. The devices shall be placed not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) on center along hip and ridge lines and placed not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the roof edge or open side of the walking surface.

1015.7 Roof access. Guards shall be provided where the roof hatch opening is located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof or grade below. The guard shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.

Exception: Guards are not required where permanent fall arrest/restraint anchorage connector devices that comply with ANSI/ASSE Z 359.1 are affixed for use during the entire roof covering lifetime. The devices shall be reevaluated for possible replacement when the entire roof covering is replaced. The devices shall be placed not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) on center along hip and ridge lines and

1029.9 Assembly aisles are required. Every occupied portion of any building, room or space used for assembly purposes that contains seats, tables, displays, similar fixtures or equipment shall be provided with aisles leading to exits or exit access doorways in accordance with this section.

1029.9.1 Minimum aisle width. The minimum clear width for aisles shall comply with one of the following:

1. Forty-eight inches (1219 mm) for stepped aisles having seating on each side.

Exception: Thirty-six inches (914 mm) where the stepped aisles serve less than 50 seats.

2. Thirty-six inches (914 mm) for stepped aisles having seating on only one side.

Exception: Twenty-three inches (584 mm) between a stepped aisle handrail and seating where a stepped aisle does not serve more than five rows on one side.

3. Twenty-three inches (584 mm) between a stepped aisle handrail or guard and seating where the stepped aisle is subdivided by a mid-aisle handrail.
4. Forty-two inches (1067 mm) for level or ramped aisles having seating on both sides.

Exceptions:

1. Thirty-six inches (914 mm) where the aisle serves less than 50 seats.
2. Thirty inches (762 mm) where the aisle does not serve more than 14 seats.
5. Thirty-six inches (914 mm) for level or ramped aisles having seating on only one side.

Exception: For other than ramped aisles that serve as part of an accessible route, 30 inches (762 mm) where the ramped aisle does not serve more than 14 seats.

6. *Libraries with open book stacks shall have main aisles not less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in width, and side, range and end aisles not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.*

1029.9.2 Aisle catchment area. The aisle shall provide sufficient capacity for the number of persons accommodated by the catchment area served by the aisle. The catchment area served by an aisle is that portion of the total space served by that section of the aisle. In establishing catchment areas, the assumption shall be made that there is a balanced use of all means of egress, with the number of persons in proportion to egress capacity.

1029.9.3 Converging aisles. Where aisles converge to form a single path of egress travel, the required capacity of that path shall be not less than the combined required capacity of the converging aisles.

1029.9.4 Uniform width and capacity. Those portions of aisles, where egress is possible in either of two directions, shall be uniform in minimum width or required capacity.

1029.9.5 Dead end aisles. Each end of an aisle shall be continuous to a cross aisle, foyer, doorway, vomitory, concourse or stairway in accordance with Section 1029.9.7 having access to an exit.

Exceptions:

1. Dead-end aisles shall be not greater than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length.
2. Dead-end aisles longer than 16 rows are permitted where seats beyond the 16th row dead-end aisle are not more than 24 seats from another aisle, measured along a row of seats having a minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.6 inch (15.2 mm) for each additional seat above seven in the row where seats have backrests or beyond 10 where seats are without backrests in the row.
3. For smoke-protected assembly seating, the dead end aisle length of vertical aisles shall not exceed a distance of 21 rows.
4. For smoke-protected assembly seating, a longer dead-end aisle is permitted where seats beyond the 21-row dead-end aisle are not more than 40 seats from another aisle, measured along a row of seats having an aisle accessway with a minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) for each additional seat above seven in the row where seats have backrests or beyond 10 where seats are without backrests in the row.

1029.9.6 Aisle measurement. The clear width for aisles shall be measured to walls, edges of seating and tread edges except for permitted projections.

Exception: The clear width of aisles adjacent to seating at tables shall be permitted to be measured in accordance with Section 1029.13.

1029.9.6.1 Assembly aisle obstructions. There shall not be obstructions in the minimum width or required capacity of aisles.

Exception: Handrails are permitted to project into the required width of stepped aisles and ramped aisles in accordance with Section 1014.8.

1029.9.7 Stairways connecting to stepped aisles. A stairway that connects a stepped aisle to a cross aisle or concourse shall be permitted to comply with the assembly aisle walking surface requirements of Section 1029.12. Transitions between stairways and stepped aisles shall comply with Section 1029.10.

1029.9.8 Stairways connecting to vomitories. A stairway that connects a vomitory to a cross aisle or concourse shall be permitted to comply with the assembly aisle walking surface requirements of Section 1029.13. Transitions between stairways and stepped aisles shall comply with Section 1029.10.

1029.10 Transitions. Transitions between stairways and stepped aisles shall comply with either Section 1029.10.1 or 1029.10.2.

1029.10.1 Transitions and stairways that maintain stepped aisle riser and tread dimensions. Stepped aisles, transitions and stairways that maintain riser and tread dimensions shall comply with Section 1029.13 as one exit access component.

1029.10.2 Transitions to stairways that do not maintain stepped aisle riser and tread dimensions. Transitions to stairways from stepped aisles with riser and tread dimensions that differ from the stairways shall comply with Sections 1029.10.2.1 and 1029.10.3.

1029.10.2.1 Stairways and stepped aisles in a straight run. Transitions where the stairway is a straight run from the stepped aisle shall have a minimum depth of 22 inches (559 mm) where the treads on the descending side of the transition have greater depth and 30 inches (762 mm) where the treads on the descending side of the transition have lesser depth.

1029.10.2.2 Stairways and stepped aisles that change direction. Transitions where the stairway changes direction from the stepped aisle shall have a minimum depth of 11 inches (280 mm) or the stepped aisle tread depth, whichever is greater, between the stepped aisle and stairway.

1029.10.3 Transition marking. A distinctive marking stripe shall be provided at each nosing or leading edge adjacent to the transition. Such stripe shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm), and not more than 2 inches (51 mm), wide. The edge marking stripe shall be distinctively different from the stepped aisle contrasting marking stripe.

1029.11 Construction. Aisles, stepped aisles and ramped aisles shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building.

Exception: Wood handrails shall be permitted for all types of construction.

1029.11.1 Walking surface. The surface of aisles, stepped aisles and ramped aisles shall be of slip-resistant materials that are securely attached. The surface for stepped aisles shall comply with Section 1011.7.1.

1029.11.2 Outdoor conditions. Outdoor aisles, stepped aisles and ramped aisles and outdoor approaches to aisles, stepped aisles and ramped aisles shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on the walking surface.

1029.12 Aisle accessways. Aisle accessways for seating at tables shall comply with Section 1029.12.1. Aisle accessways for seating in rows shall comply with Section 1029.12.2.

1029.12.1 Seating at tables. Where seating is located at a table or counter and is adjacent to an aisle or aisle accessway, the measurement of required clear width of the aisle or aisle accessway shall be made to a line 19 inches (483 mm) away from and parallel to the edge of the table or counter. The 19-inch (483 mm) distance shall be measured perpendicular to the side of the table or counter. In the case of other side boundaries for aisles or aisle access-

ways, the clear width shall be measured to walls, edges of seating and tread edges.

Exception: Where tables or counters are served by fixed seats, the width of the aisle or aisle accessway shall be measured from the back of the seat.

1029.12.1.1 Aisle accessway capacity and width for seating at tables. Aisle accessways serving arrangements of seating at tables or counters shall comply with the capacity requirements of Section 1005.1 but shall not have less than 12 inches (305 mm) of width plus $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) of width for each additional 1 foot (305 mm), or fraction thereof, beyond 12 feet (3658 mm) of aisle accessway length measured from the center of the seat farthest from an aisle.

Exception: Portions of an aisle accessway having a length not exceeding 6 feet (1829 mm) and used by a total of not more than four persons.

1029.12.1.2 Seating at table aisle accessway length. The length of travel along the aisle accessway shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) from any seat to the point where a person has a choice of two or more paths of egress travel to separate exits.

1029.12.2 Clear width of aisle accessways serving seating in rows. Where seating rows have 14 or fewer seats, the minimum clear aisle accessway width shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) measured as the clear horizontal distance from the back of the row ahead and the nearest projection of the row behind. Where chairs have automatic or self-rising seats, the measurement shall be made with seats in the raised position. Where any chair in the row does not have an automatic or self-rising seat, the measurements shall be made with the seat in the down position. For seats with folding tablet arms, row spacing shall be determined with the tablet arm in the used position.

Exception: For seats with folding tablet arms, row spacing is permitted to be determined with the tablet arm in the stored position where the tablet arm when raised manually to vertical position in one motion automatically returns to the stored position by force of gravity.

1029.12.2.1 Dual access. For rows of seating served by aisles or doorways at both ends, there shall be not more than 100 seats per row. The minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) between rows shall be increased by 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) for every additional seat beyond 14 seats where seats have backrests or beyond 21 where seats are without backrests. The minimum clear width is not required to exceed 22 inches (559 mm).

Exception: For smoke-protected assembly seating, the row length limits for a 12-inch-wide (305 mm) aisle accessway, beyond which the aisle accessway minimum clear width shall be increased, are in Table 1029.12.2.1.

**TABLE 1029.12.2.1
SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY AISLE ACCESSWAYS**

TOTAL NUMBER OF SEATS IN THE SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF SEATS PER ROW PERMITTED TO HAVE A MINIMUM 12-INCH CLEAR WIDTH AISLE ACCESSWAY			
	Aisle or doorway at both ends of row		Aisle or doorway at one end of row only	
	Seats with backrests	Seats without backrests	Seats with backrests	Seats without backrests
Less than 4,000	14	21	7	10
4,000	15	22	7	10
7,000	16	23	8	11
10,000	17	24	8	11
13,000	18	25	9	12
16,000	19	26	9	12
19,000	20	27	10	13
22,000 and greater	21	28	11	14

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1029.12.2.2 Single access. For rows of seating served by an aisle or doorway at only one end of the row, the minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) between rows shall be increased by 0.6 inch (15.2 mm) for every additional seat beyond seven seats where seats have backrests or beyond 10 where seats are without backrests. The minimum clear width is not required to exceed 22 inches (559 mm).

Exception: For smoke-protected assembly seating, the row length limits for a 12-inch-wide (305 mm) aisle accessway, beyond which the aisle accessway minimum clear width shall be increased, are in Table 1029.12.2.1.

1029.13 Assembly aisle walking surfaces. Ramped aisles shall comply with Sections 1029.13.1 through 1029.13.1.3. Stepped aisles shall comply with Sections 1029.13.2 through 1029.13.2.4.

1029.13.1 Ramped aisles. Aisles that are sloped more than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) shall be considered a ramped aisle. Ramped aisles that serve as part of an accessible route in accordance with Sections 1009 and 1108.2 shall have a maximum slope of one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope). The slope of other ramped aisles shall not exceed one unit vertical in 8 units horizontal (12.5-percent slope).

1029.13.1.1 Cross slope. The slope measured perpendicular to the direction of travel of a ramped aisle shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

1029.13.1.2 Landings. Ramped aisles shall have landings in accordance with Sections 1012.6 through 1012.6.5. Landings for ramped aisles shall be permitted to overlap required aisles or cross aisles.

1029.13.1.3 Edge protection. Ramped aisles shall have edge protection in accordance with Section 1012.10 and 1012.10.1.

Exception: In assembly spaces with fixed seating, edge protection is not required on the sides of

ramped aisles where the ramped aisles provide access to the adjacent seating and aisle accessways.

1029.13.2 Stepped aisles. Aisles with a slope exceeding one unit vertical in eight units horizontal (12.5-percent slope) shall consist of a series of risers and treads that extends across the full width of aisles and complies with Sections 1029.13.2.1 through 1029.13.2.4.

1029.13.2.1 Treads. Tread depths shall be not less than 11 inches (279 mm) and shall have dimensional uniformity.

Exception: The tolerance between adjacent treads shall not exceed $\frac{3}{16}$ inch (4.8 mm).

1029.13.2.2 Risers. Where the gradient of stepped aisles is to be the same as the gradient of adjoining seating areas, the riser height shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nor more than 8 inches (203 mm) and shall be uniform within each flight.

Exceptions:

1. Riser height nonuniformity shall be limited to the extent necessitated by changes in the gradient of the adjoining seating area to maintain adequate sightlines. Where nonuniformities exceed $\frac{3}{16}$ inch (4.8 mm) between adjacent risers, the exact location of such nonuniformities shall be indicated with a distinctive marking stripe on each tread at the nosing or leading edge adjacent to the nonuniform risers. Such stripe shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm), and not more than 2 inches (51 mm), wide. The edge marking stripe shall be distinctively different from the contrasting marking stripe.
2. Riser heights not exceeding 9 inches (229 mm) shall be permitted where they are necessitated by the slope of the adjacent seating areas to maintain sightlines.

1029.13.2.2.1 Construction tolerances. The tolerance between adjacent risers on a stepped aisle that

were designed to be equal height shall not exceed $\frac{3}{16}$ inch (4.8 mm). Where the stepped aisle is designed in accordance with Exception 1 of Section 1029.13.2.2, the stepped aisle shall be constructed so that each riser of unequal height, determined in the direction of descent, is not more than $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) in height different from adjacent risers where stepped aisle treads are less than 22 inches (560 mm) in depth and $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) in height different from adjacent risers where stepped aisle treads are 22 inches (560 mm) or greater in depth.

1029.13.2.3 Tread contrasting marking stripe. A contrasting marking stripe shall be provided on each tread at the nosing or leading edge such that the location of each tread is readily apparent when viewed in descent. Such stripe shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm), and not more than 2 inches (51 mm), wide.

Exception: The contrasting marking stripe is permitted to be omitted where tread surfaces are such that the location of each tread is readily apparent when viewed in descent.

1029.13.2.4 Nosing and profile. Nosing and riser profile shall comply with Sections 1011.5.5 through 1011.5.5.3.

1029.14 Seat stability. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes, the seats shall be securely fastened to the floor.

Exceptions:

1. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof without ramped or tiered floors for seating and with 200 or fewer seats, the seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.
2. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof without ramped or tiered floors for seating, the seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.
3. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof without ramped or tiered floors for seating and with greater than 200 seats, the seats shall be fastened together in groups of not less than three or the seats shall be securely fastened to the floor.
4. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes where flexibility of the seating arrangement is an integral part of the design and function of the space and seating is on tiered levels, not more than 200 seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor. Plans showing seating, tiers and aisles shall be submitted for approval.
5. Groups of seats within a building, room or space used for assembly purposes separated from other seating by railings, guards, partial height walls or similar barriers with level floors and having not more than 14 seats per group shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

6. Seats intended for musicians or other performers and separated by railings, guards, partial height walls or similar barriers shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

1029.15 Handrails. Ramped aisles having a slope exceeding one unit vertical in 15 units horizontal (6.7-percent slope) and stepped aisles shall be provided with handrails in compliance with Section 1014 located either at one or both sides of the aisle or within the aisle width.

Exceptions:

1. Handrails are not required for ramped aisles with seating on both sides.
2. Handrails are not required where, at the side of the aisle, there is a guard with a top surface that complies with the graspability requirements of handrails in accordance with Section 1014.3.
3. Handrail extensions are not required at the top and bottom of stepped aisles and ramped aisles to permit crossovers within the aisles.

1029.15.1 Discontinuous handrails. Where there is seating on both sides of the aisle, the mid-aisle handrails shall be discontinuous with gaps or breaks at intervals not exceeding five rows to facilitate access to seating and to permit crossing from one side of the aisle to the other. These gaps or breaks shall have a clear width of not less than 22 inches (559 mm) and not greater than 36 inches (914 mm), measured horizontally, and the mid-aisle handrail shall have rounded terminations or bends.

1029.15.2 Handrail termination. Handrails located on the side of stepped aisles shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stepped aisle flight.

1029.15.3 Mid-aisle termination. Mid-aisle handrails shall not extend beyond the lowest riser and shall terminate within 18 inches (381 mm), measured horizontally, from the lowest riser. Handrail extensions are not required.

Exception: Mid-aisle handrails shall be permitted to extend beyond the lowest riser where the handrail extensions do not obstruct the width of the cross aisle.

1029.15.4 Rails. Where mid-aisle handrails are provided in stepped aisles, there shall be an additional rail located approximately 12 inches (305 mm) below the handrail. The rail shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.8.1.2.

1029.16 Assembly guards. Guards adjacent to seating in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes shall be provided where required by Section 1015 and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1015 except where provided in accordance with Sections 1029.16.1 through 1029.16.4. At bleachers, grandstands and folding and telescopic seating, guards must be provided where required by ICC 300 and Section 1029.16.1.

1029.16.1 Perimeter guards. Perimeter guards shall be provided where the footboards or walking surface of seating facilities are more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below. Where the seatboards are adjacent to

50 square feet (1.02 L/s for each 10 m²) of crawl-space floor area and the ground surface is covered with a Class I vapor retarder.

4. Ventilation openings are not required where the ground surface is covered with a Class I vapor retarder, the perimeter walls are insulated and the space is conditioned in accordance with the *California Energy Code*.
5. For buildings in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, the openings for under-floor ventilation shall be deemed as meeting the flood opening requirements of ASCE 24 provided that the ventilation openings are designed and installed in accordance with ASCE 24.
6. **[SPCB]** For purposes of structural pest control inspections, ventilation shall be considered inadequate when the lack thereof has contributed to the growth of wood-destroying pests or organisms.

1203.5 Natural ventilation. Natural ventilation of an occupied space shall be through windows, doors, louvers or other openings to the outdoors. The operating mechanism for such openings shall be provided with ready access so that the openings are readily controllable by the building occupants.

[HCD 1] In employee housing, all openable windows in rooms used for living, dining, cooking or sleeping purposes, and toilet and bath buildings, shall be provided and maintained with insect screening.

[HCD 1] Door openings of rooms used for dining, cooking, toilet and bathing facilities in employee housing shall be provided and maintained with insect screening or with solid doors equipped with self-closing devices in lieu thereof, when approved by the enforcement agency.

[HCD 1] The windows, doors, louvers or other approved closeable openings not required by Section 1029 may open into a passive solar energy collector for ventilation required by this section. The area of ventilation openings to the outside of the passive solar energy collector shall be increased to compensate for the openings required by the interior space.

1203.5.1 Ventilation area required. The openable area of the openings to the outdoors shall be not less than 4 percent of the floor area being ventilated.

1203.5.1.1 Adjoining spaces. Where rooms and spaces without openings to the outdoors are ventilated through an adjoining room, the opening to the adjoining room shall be unobstructed and shall have an area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 25 square feet (2.3 m²). The openable area of the openings to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

Exception: Exterior openings required for ventilation shall be permitted to open into a sunroom with thermal isolation or a patio cover provided that the openable area between the sunroom addition or patio cover and the interior room shall have an area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 20 square feet (1.86 m²). The openable area of the openings to

the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

1203.5.1.2 Openings below grade. Where openings below grade provide required natural ventilation, the outside horizontal clear space measured perpendicular to the opening shall be one and one-half times the depth of the opening. The depth of the opening shall be measured from the average adjoining ground level to the bottom of the opening.

1203.5.2 Contaminants exhausted. Contaminant sources in naturally ventilated spaces shall be removed in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code* and the *California Fire Code*.

1203.5.2.1 Bathrooms. Rooms containing bathtubs, showers, spas and similar bathing fixtures shall be mechanically ventilated in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*.

The minimum exhaust rate shall not be less than that established by Table 403.7 "Minimum Exhaust Rates." See California Mechanical Code, Chapter 5, for additional provisions related to environmental air ducts.

[HCD 1] In addition to the requirements in this section and in the *California Mechanical Code*, bathrooms in Group R occupancies shall be mechanically ventilated in accordance with the *California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen)*, Chapter 4, Division 4.5.

1203.5.3 Openings on yards or courts. Where natural ventilation is to be provided by openings onto yards or courts, such yards or courts shall comply with Section 1206.

1203.6 Other ventilation and exhaust systems. Ventilation and exhaust systems for occupancies and operations involving flammable or combustible hazards or other contaminant sources as covered in the *California Mechanical Code* or the *California Fire Code* shall be provided as required by both codes.

SECTION 1204 TEMPERATURE CONTROL

1204.1 Equipment and systems. Interior spaces intended for human occupancy shall be provided with active or passive space heating systems capable of maintaining an indoor temperature of not less than 68°F (20°C) at a point 3 feet (914 mm) above the floor on the design heating day.

Exceptions:

1. Space heating systems are not required for:
 - 1.1. Interior spaces where the primary purpose of the space is not associated with human comfort.
 - 1.2. Group F, H, S or U occupancies.
2. **[HCD 1]** For limited-density owner-built rural dwellings, a heating facility or appliance shall be installed in each dwelling subject to the provisions of Subchapter 1, Chapter 1, Title 25, *California Code of Regulations*, commencing with Section 74; however, there shall be no specified requirement for heating capacity or temperature maintenance. The use of solid-fuel or

solar-heating devices shall be deemed as complying with the requirements of this section. If nonrenewable fuel is used in these dwellings, rooms so heated shall meet current installation standards.

3. **[OSHPD 1, 2, 3 & 4]** Space heating systems shall comply with the requirements of the California Mechanical Code.
4. **[HCD 1]** When a passive solar energy collector is designed as a conditioned area it shall comply with the California Energy Code. Nonconditioned passive solar energy collectors are exempt from compliance with the California Energy Code.

**SECTION 1205
LIGHTING**

1205.1 General. Every space intended for human occupancy shall be provided with natural light by means of exterior glazed openings in accordance with Section 1205.2 or shall be provided with artificial light in accordance with Section 1205.3. Exterior glazed openings shall open directly onto a public way or onto a yard or court in accordance with Section 1206.

[HCD 1] Glazed openings may open into a passive solar energy collector provided the area of exterior glazed openings in the passive solar energy collector is increased to compensate for the area required by the interior space.

1205.2 Natural light. The minimum net glazed area shall be not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the room served.

1205.2.1 Adjoining spaces. For the purpose of natural lighting, any room is permitted to be considered as a portion of an adjoining room where one-half of the area of the common wall is open and unobstructed and provides an opening of not less than one-tenth of the floor area of the interior room or 25 square feet (2.32 m²), whichever is greater.

Exception: Openings required for natural light shall be permitted to open into a sunroom with thermal isolation or a patio cover where the common wall provides a glazed area of not less than one-tenth of the floor area of the interior room or 20 square feet (1.86 m²), whichever is greater.

1205.2.2 Exterior openings. Exterior openings required by Section 1205.2 for natural light shall open directly onto a public way, yard or court, as set forth in Section 1206.

Exceptions:

1. Required exterior openings are permitted to open into a roofed porch where the porch meets all of the following criteria:
 - 1.1. Abuts a public way, yard or court.
 - 1.2. Has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).
 - 1.3. Has a longer side at least 65 percent open and unobstructed.
2. Skylights are not required to open directly onto a public way, yard or court.

1205.3 Artificial light. Artificial light shall be provided that is adequate to provide an average illumination of 10 footcandles (107 lux) over the area of the room at a height of 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor level.

1205.4 Stairway illumination. Stairways within dwelling units and exterior stairways serving a dwelling unit shall have an illumination level on tread runs of not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux). Stairways in other occupancies shall be governed by Chapter 10.

1205.4.1 Controls. The control for activation of the required stairway lighting shall be in accordance with the California Electrical Code.

1205.5 Emergency egress lighting. The means of egress shall be illuminated in accordance with Section 1008.1.

1205.6 Light pollution reduction. **[BSC-CG]** See California Green Building Standards Code, Chapter 5, Division 5.1 for additional light pollution reduction requirements.

1205.7 Campus lighting for parking facilities and primary walkways at california state universities, colleges and community colleges. **[BSC]** Artificial light shall be provided for parking facilities and primary walkways at California State Universities, colleges and community colleges in accordance with provisions of this subsection. This subsection shall not apply to the University of California unless the Regents of the University of California, by resolution, make it applicable.

1205.7.1 Lighting requirements. Based on the recommendations of the most current edition of the Illumination Engineering Society lighting handbook, the following lighting standards shall be used for all new construction of open parking facilities, covered parking facilities and primary walkways:

1. Open and covered parking facilities.
 - 1.1. Medium-level activity usage when medium usage is present.
 - 1.2. High-level activity usage when high usage is present.
2. Primary campus walkways.
 - 2.1. Medium-level activity usage when medium usage is present.
 - 2.2. High-level activity usage when high usage is present.

**SECTION 1206
YARDS OR COURTS**

1206.1 General. This section shall apply to yards and courts adjacent to exterior openings that provide natural light or ventilation. Such yards and courts shall be on the same lot as the building.

1206.2 Yards. Yards shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width for buildings two stories or less above grade plane. For buildings more than two stories above grade plane, the minimum width of the yard shall be increased at the rate of 1 foot (305 mm) for each additional story. For buildings exceeding 14 stories above grade plane, the required width of the yard shall be computed on the basis of 14 stories above grade plane.

2. Brick veneer with a clear airspace as specified in this code.
3. Other approved vented claddings.

**TABLE 1405.3.2
CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS**

ZONE	CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS PERMITTED FOR: ^a
Marine 4	Vented cladding over wood structural panels Vented cladding over fiberboard Vented cladding over gypsum Insulated sheathing with <i>R</i> -value ≥ R2.5 over 2 × 4 wall Insulated sheathing with <i>R</i> -value ≥ R3.75 over 2 × 6 wall
5	Vented cladding over wood structural panels Vented cladding over fiberboard Vented cladding over gypsum Insulated sheathing with <i>R</i> -value ≥ R5 over 2 × 4 wall Insulated sheathing with <i>R</i> -value ≥ R7.5 over 2 × 6 wall
6	Vented cladding over fiberboard Vented cladding over gypsum Insulated sheathing with <i>R</i> -value ≥ R7.5 over 2 × 4 wall Insulated sheathing with <i>R</i> -value ≥ R11.25 over 2 × 6 wall
7 and 8	Insulated sheathing with <i>R</i> -value ≥ R10 over 2 × 4 wall Insulated sheathing with <i>R</i> -value ≥ R15 over 2 × 6 wall

For SI: 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m³.

a. Spray foam with a minimum density of 2 lbs/ft³ applied to the interior cavity side of wood structural panels, fiberboard, insulating sheathing or gypsum is deemed to meet the insulating sheathing requirement where the spray foam *R*-value meets or exceeds the specified insulating sheathing *R*-value.

1405.4 Flashing. Flashing shall be installed in such a manner so as to prevent moisture from entering the wall or to redirect that moisture to the exterior. Flashing shall be installed at the perimeters of exterior door and window assemblies, penetrations and terminations of exterior wall assemblies, exterior wall intersections with roofs, chimneys, porches, decks, balconies and similar projections and at built-in gutters and similar locations where moisture could enter the wall. Flashing with projecting flanges shall be installed on both sides and the ends of copings, under sills and continuously above projecting trim.

1405.4.1 Exterior wall pockets. In exterior walls of buildings or structures, wall pockets or crevices in which moisture can accumulate shall be avoided or protected with caps or drips, or other approved means shall be provided to prevent water damage.

1405.4.2 Masonry. Flashing and weep holes in anchored veneer shall be located in the first course of masonry above finished ground level above the foundation wall or slab, and other points of support, including structural floors, shelf angles and lintels where anchored veneers are designed in accordance with Section 1405.6.

1405.5 Wood veneers. Wood veneers on exterior walls of buildings of Type I, II, III and IV construction shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) nominal thickness, 0.438-inch (11.1 mm) exterior hardboard siding or 0.375-inch (9.5 mm) exte-

rior-type wood structural panels or particleboard and shall conform to the following:

1. The veneer shall not exceed 40 feet (12 190 mm) in height above grade. Where fire-retardant-treated wood is used, the height shall not exceed 60 feet (18 290 mm) in height above grade.
2. The veneer is attached to or furred from a noncombustible backing that is fire-resistance rated as required by other provisions of this code.
3. Where open or spaced wood veneers (without concealed spaces) are used, they shall not project more than 24 inches (610 mm) from the building wall.

[BS] 1405.6 Anchored masonry veneer. Anchored masonry veneer shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1405.6, 1405.7, 1405.8 and 1405.9 and Sections 12.1 and 12.2 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

[BS] 1405.6.1 Tolerances. Anchored masonry veneers in accordance with Chapter 14 are not required to meet the tolerances in Article 3.3 F1 of TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

[BS] 1405.6.2 Seismic requirements. Anchored masonry veneer located in Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall conform to the requirements of Section 12.2.2.10 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

[BS] 1405.7 Stone veneer. Anchored stone veneer units not exceeding 10 inches (254 mm) in thickness shall be anchored directly to masonry, concrete or to stud construction by one of the following methods:

1. With concrete or masonry backing, anchor ties shall be not less than 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) corrosion-resistant wire, or approved equal, formed beyond the base of the backing. The legs of the loops shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length bent at right angles and laid in the mortar joint, and spaced so that the eyes or loops are 12 inches (305 mm) maximum on center in both directions. There shall be provided not less than a 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) corrosion-resistant wire tie, or approved equal, threaded through the exposed loops for every 2 square feet (0.2 m²) of stone veneer. This tie shall be a loop having legs not less than 15 inches (381 mm) in length bent so that the tie will lie in the stone veneer mortar joint. The last 2 inches (51 mm) of each wire leg shall have a right-angle bend. One-inch (25 mm) minimum thickness of cement grout shall be placed between the backing and the stone veneer.
2. With wood stud backing, a 2-inch by 2-inch (51 by 51 mm) 0.0625-inch (1.59 mm) zinc-coated or nonmetallic coated wire mesh with two layers of water-resistive barrier in accordance with Section 1404.2 shall be applied directly to wood studs spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center. On studs, the mesh shall be attached with 2-inch-long (51 mm) corrosion-resistant steel wire furring nails at 4 inches (102 mm) on center providing a minimum 1.125-inch (29 mm) penetration into each stud and with 8d annular threaded nails at 8 inches (203 mm) on center. into top and bottom plates

EXTERIOR WALLS

or with equivalent wire ties. There shall be not less than a 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) zinc-coated or nonmetallic coated wire, or approved equal, attached to the stud with not smaller than an 8d (0.120 in. diameter) annular threaded nail for every 2 square feet (0.2 m²) of stone veneer. This tie shall be a loop having legs not less than 15 inches (381 mm) in length, so bent that the tie will lie in the stone veneer mortar joint. The last 2 inches (51 mm) of each wire leg shall have a right-angle bend. One-inch (25 mm) minimum thickness of cement grout shall be placed between the backing and the stone veneer.

3. With cold-formed steel stud backing, a 2-inch by 2-inch (51 by 51 mm) 0.0625-inch (1.59 mm) zinc-coated or nonmetallic coated wire mesh with two layers of water-resistant barrier in accordance with Section 1404.2 shall be applied directly to steel studs spaced a not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center. The mesh shall be attached with corrosion-resistant #8 self-drilling, tapping screws at 4 inches (102 mm) on center, and at 8 inches (203 mm) on center into top and bottom tracks or with equivalent wire ties. Screws shall extend through the steel connection not fewer than three exposed threads. There shall be not less than a 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) corrosion-resistant wire, or approved equal, attached to the stud with not smaller than a #8 self-drilling, tapping screw extending through the steel framing not fewer than three exposed threads for every 2 square feet (0.2 m²) of stone veneer. This tie shall be a loop having legs not less than 15 inches (381 mm) in length, so bent that the tie will lie in the stone veneer mortar joint. The last 2 inches (51 mm) of each wire leg shall have a right-angle bend. One-inch (25 mm) minimum thickness of cement grout shall be placed between the backing and the stone veneer. The cold-formed steel framing members shall have a minimum bare steel thickness of 0.0428 inches (1.087 mm).

[BS] 1405.8 Slab-type veneer. Anchored slab-type veneer units not exceeding 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness shall be anchored directly to masonry, concrete or light-frame construction. For veneer units of marble, travertine, granite or other stone units of slab form, ties of corrosion-resistant dowels in drilled holes shall be located in the middle third of the edge of the units, spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) apart around the periphery of each unit with not less than four ties per veneer unit. Units shall not exceed 20 square feet (1.9 m²) in area. If the dowels are not tight fitting, the holes shall be drilled not more than 0.063 inch (1.6 mm) larger in diameter than the dowel, with the hole countersunk to a diameter and depth equal to twice the diameter of the dowel in order to provide a tight-fitting key of cement mortar at the dowel locations where the mortar in the joint has set. Veneer ties shall be corrosion-resistant metal capable of resisting, in tension or compression, a force equal to two times the weight of the attached veneer. If made of sheet metal, veneer ties shall be not smaller in area than 0.0336 by 1 inch (0.853 by 25 mm) or, if made of wire, not smaller in diameter than 0.1483-inch (3.76 mm) wire.

[BS] 1405.9 Terra cotta. Anchored terra cotta or ceramic units not less than 1⁵/₈ inches (41 mm) thick shall be anchored directly to masonry, concrete or stud construction. Tied terra cotta or ceramic veneer units shall be not less than 1⁵/₈ inches (41 mm) thick with projecting dovetail webs on the back surface spaced approximately 8 inches (203 mm) on center. The facing shall be tied to the backing wall with corrosion-resistant metal anchors of not less than No. 8 gage wire installed at the top of each piece in horizontal bed joints not less than 12 inches (305 mm) nor more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center; these anchors shall be secured to 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) corrosion-resistant pencil rods that pass through the vertical aligned loop anchors in the backing wall. The veneer ties shall have sufficient strength to support the full weight of the veneer in tension. The facing shall be set with not less than a 2-inch (51 mm) space from the backing wall and the space shall be filled solidly with Portland cement grout and pea gravel. Immediately prior to setting, the backing wall and the facing shall be drenched with clean water and shall be distinctly damp when the grout is poured.

[BS] 1405.10 Adhered masonry veneer. Adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the applicable requirements in this section and Sections 12.1 and 12.3 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

[BS] 1405.10.1 Exterior adhered masonry veneer. Exterior adhered masonry veneer shall be installed in accordance with Section 1405.10 and the manufacturer's instructions.

[BS] 1405.10.1.1 Water-resistive barriers. Water-resistive barriers shall be installed as required in Section 2510.6.

[BS] 1405.10.1.2 Flashing. Flashing shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1405.4 and the following.

[BS] 1405.10.1.2.1 Flashing at foundation. A corrosion-resistant screed or flashing of a minimum 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) or 26 gage galvanized or plastic with a minimum vertical attachment flange of 3¹/₂ inches (89 mm) shall be installed to extend not less than 1 inch (25 mm) below the foundation plate line on exterior stud walls in accordance with Section 1405.4. The water-resistive barrier shall lap over the exterior of the attachment flange of the screed or flashing.

[BS] 1405.10.1.3 Clearances. On exterior stud walls, adhered masonry veneer shall be installed not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the earth, or not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above paved areas, or not less than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) above exterior walking surfaces that are supported by the same foundation that supports the exterior wall.

[BS] 1405.10.1.4 Adhered masonry veneer installed with lath and mortar. Exterior adhered masonry veneer installed with lath and mortar shall comply with the following.

[BS] 1405.10.1.4.1 Lathing. Lathing shall comply with the requirements of Section 2510.

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 15 – ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter											X										
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	X			X	X			X	X	X			X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below			X																		
Chapter / Section																					
1501			X																		
1502			X																		
1503.4				X	X																
1503.4.1				X	X																
1505			X																		
1506			X																		
1507			X																		
1507.3.10								X	X	X			X								
1507.7.8								X	X	X			X								
1509			X																		
1510.7.1, <i>Exception</i>	X			X	X			X	X												
1512			X																		
1513								X	X	X			X								

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 111.

CHAPTER 15 ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [BF], [BG] or [P] will be considered by one of the code development committees meeting during the 2015 (Group A) Code Development Cycle. All other code change proposals will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page ix.

SECTION 1501 GENERAL

1501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the design, materials, construction and quality of roof assemblies, and rooftop structures.

SECTION 1502 DEFINITIONS

1502.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AGGREGATE.

BALLAST.

BUILDING-INTEGRATED PHOTOVOLTAIC (BIPV) PRODUCT.

BUILT-UP ROOF COVERING.

INTERLAYMENT.

MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT SCREEN.

METAL ROOF PANEL.

METAL ROOF SHINGLE.

MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOF COVERING.

PENTHOUSE.

PHOTOVOLTAIC MODULE.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEM.

PHOTOVOLTAIC SHINGLES.

POSITIVE ROOF DRAINAGE.

RADIANT BARRIER.

REROOFING.

- ROOF ASSEMBLY.
- ROOF COVERING.
- ROOF COVERING SYSTEM.
- ROOF DECK.
- ROOF RECOVER.
- ROOF REPAIR.
- ROOF REPLACEMENT.
- ROOF VENTILATION.
- ROOFTOP STRUCTURE.
- SCUPPER.
- SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE.
- UNDERLAYMENT.
- VEGETATIVE ROOF.

**SECTION 1503
WEATHER PROTECTION**

1503.1 General. Roof decks shall be covered with approved roof coverings secured to the building or structure in accordance with the provisions of this chapter. Roof coverings shall be designed and installed in accordance with this code and the approved manufacturer’s instructions such that the roof covering shall serve to protect the building or structure.

1503.2 Flashing. Flashing shall be installed in such a manner so as to prevent moisture entering the wall and roof through joints in copings, through moisture-permeable materials and at intersections with parapet walls and other penetrations through the roof plane.

1503.2.1 Locations. Flashing shall be installed at wall and roof intersections, at gutters, wherever there is a change in roof slope or direction and around roof openings. Where flashing is of metal, the metal shall be corrosion resistant with a thickness of not less than 0.019 inch (0.483 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet).

1503.3 Coping. Parapet walls shall be properly coped with noncombustible, weatherproof materials of a width no less than the thickness of the parapet wall.

[P] 1503.4 Roof drainage. Design and installation of roof drainage systems shall comply with Section 1503 of this code and *Chapter 11* of the *California Plumbing Code*.

[P] 1503.4.1 Secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers. Where roof drains are required, secondary (emergency overflow) roof drains or scuppers shall be provided where the roof perimeter construction extends above the roof in such a manner that water will be entrapped if the primary drains allow buildup for any reason. The installation and sizing of secondary emergency overflow drains, leaders and conductors shall comply with *Chapter 11* of the *California Plumbing Code*.

1503.4.2 Scuppers. When scuppers are used for secondary (emergency overflow) roof drainage, the quantity,

size, location and inlet elevation of the scuppers shall be sized to prevent the depth of ponding water from exceeding that for which the roof was designed as determined by Section 1611.1. Scuppers shall not have an opening dimension of less than 4 inches (102 mm). The flow through the primary system shall not be considered when locating and sizing scuppers.

1503.4.3 Gutters. Gutters and leaders placed on the outside of buildings, other than Group R-3, private garages and buildings of Type V construction, shall be of noncombustible material or a minimum of Schedule 40 plastic pipe.

1503.5 Attic and rafter ventilation. Intake and exhaust vents shall be provided in accordance with Section 1203.2 and the vent product manufacturer’s installation instructions.

1503.6 Crickets and saddles. A cricket or saddle shall be installed on the ridge side of any chimney or penetration greater than 30 inches (762 mm) wide as measured perpendicular to the slope. Cricket or saddle coverings shall be sheet metal or of the same material as the roof covering.

Exception: Unit skylights installed in accordance with Section 2405.5 and flashed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions shall be permitted to be installed without a cricket or saddle.

**SECTION 1504
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

1504.1.1 Wind resistance of asphalt shingles. Asphalt shingles shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D7158. Asphalt shingles shall meet the classification requirements of Table 1507.2.7.1(1) for the appropriate maximum basic wind speed. Asphalt shingle packaging shall bear a label to indicate compliance with ASTM D7158 and the required classification in Table 1507.2.7.1(1).

Exception: Asphalt shingles that are not included in the scope of ASTM D7158 shall be tested and labeled to indicate compliance with ASTM D3161 and the required classification in Table 1507.2.7.1(1).

1504.2 Wind resistance of clay and concrete tile. Wind loads on clay and concrete tile roof coverings shall be in accordance with Section 1609.5.

1504.2.1 Testing. Testing of concrete and clay roof tiles shall be in accordance with Sections 1504.2.1.1 and 1504.2.1.2.

1504.2.1.1 Overturning resistance. Concrete and clay roof tiles shall be tested to determine their resistance to overturning due to wind in accordance with SBCCI SSTD 11 and Chapter 15.

1504.2.1.2 Wind tunnel testing. Where concrete and clay roof tiles do not satisfy the limitations in Chapter 16 for rigid tile, a wind tunnel test shall be used to determine the wind characteristics of the concrete or

hours with openings protected in accordance with Section 711. Such structures located on the top of a building greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in building height shall be supported by noncombustible construction.

[BG] 1510.5.2 Towers and spires. Enclosed towers and spires shall have exterior walls constructed as required for the building on top of which such towers and spires are built. The roof covering of spires shall be not less than the same class of roof covering required for the building on top of which the spire is located.

[BG] 1510.6 Mechanical equipment screens. Mechanical equipment screens shall be constructed of the materials specified for the exterior walls in accordance with the type of construction of the building. Where the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), mechanical equipment screens shall not be required to comply with the fire-resistance rating requirements.

[BG] 1510.6.1 Height limitations. Mechanical equipment screens shall not exceed 18 feet (5486 mm) in height above the roof deck, as measured to the highest point on the mechanical equipment screen.

Exception: Where located on buildings of Type IA construction, the height of mechanical equipment screens shall not be limited.

[BG] 1510.6.2 Type I, II, III and IV construction. Regardless of the requirements in Section 1510.6, mechanical equipment screens that are located on the roof decks of buildings of Type I, II, III or IV construction shall be permitted to be constructed of combustible materials in accordance with any one of the following limitations:

1. The fire separation distance shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) and the height of the mechanical equipment screen above the roof deck shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) as measured to the highest point on the mechanical equipment screen.
2. The fire separation distance shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) and the mechanical equipment screen shall be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 for exterior installation.
3. Where exterior wall covering panels are used, the panels shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use, with each face tested independently in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The panels shall be tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use in accordance with, and shall comply with the acceptance criteria of, NFPA 285 and shall be installed as tested. Where the panels are tested as part of an exterior wall assembly in accordance with NFPA 285, the panels shall be installed on the face of the mechanical equipment screen supporting structure in the same manner as they were installed on the tested exterior wall assembly.

[BS] 1510.6.3 Type V construction. The height of mechanical equipment screens located on the roof decks of buildings of Type V construction, as measured from grade plane to the highest point on the mechanical equipment screen, shall be permitted to exceed the maximum building height allowed for the building by other provisions of this code where complying with any one of the following limitations, provided the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm):

1. Where the fire separation distance is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm), the height above grade plane of the mechanical equipment screen shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) more than the maximum building height allowed;
2. The mechanical equipment screen shall be constructed of noncombustible materials;
3. The mechanical equipment screen shall be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 for exterior installation; or
4. Where the fire separation distance is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm), the mechanical equipment screen shall be constructed of materials having a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use with each face tested independently in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

[BS] 1510.7 Photovoltaic panels and modules. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules shall be designed in accordance with this section.

[BS] 1510.7.1 Wind resistance. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules shall be designed for component and cladding wind loads in accordance with Chapter 16 using an effective wind area based on the dimensions of a single unit frame.

Exception: [BSC, HCD-1, HCD-2, DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] The effective wind area shall be in accordance with Chapter 16 and ASCE 7 Section 26.2.

[BS] 1510.7.2 Fire classification. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules shall have the fire classification in accordance with Section 1505.9.

[BS] 1510.7.3 Installation. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

[BS] 1510.7.4 Photovoltaic panels and modules. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1703 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

[BS] 1510.8 Other rooftop structures. Rooftop structures not regulated by Sections 1510.2 through 1510.7 shall comply with Sections 1510.8.1 through 1510.8.5, as applicable.

[BS] 1510.8.1 Aerial supports. Aerial supports shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

Exception: Aerial supports not greater than 12 feet (3658 mm) in height as measured from the roof deck to

the highest point on the aerial supports shall be permitted to be constructed of combustible materials.

[BS] 1510.8.2 Bulkheads. Bulkheads used for the shelter of mechanical or electrical equipment or vertical shaft openings in the roof assembly shall comply with Section 1510.2 as penthouses. Bulkheads used for any other purpose shall be considered as an additional story of the building.

[BS] 1510.8.3 Dormers. Dormers shall be of the same type of construction as required for the roof in which such dormers are located or the exterior walls of the building.

[BS] 1510.8.4 Fences. Fences and similar structures shall comply with Section 1510.6 as mechanical equipment screens.

1510.8.5 Flagpoles. Flagpoles and similar structures shall not be required to be constructed of noncombustible materials and shall not be limited in height or number.

[BS] 1510.9 Structural fire resistance. The structural frame and roof construction supporting imposed loads upon the roof by any rooftop structure shall comply with the requirements of Table 601. The fire-resistance reduction permitted by Table 601, Note a, shall not apply to roofs containing rooftop structures. materials and shall not be limited in height or number.

SECTION 1511 REROOFING

1511.1 General. Materials and methods of application used for recovering or replacing an existing roof covering shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 15.

Exceptions:

1. Roof replacement or roof recover of existing low-slope roof coverings shall not be required to meet the minimum design slope requirement of one-quarter unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in Section 1507 for roofs that provide positive roof drainage.
2. Recovering or replacing an existing roof covering shall not be required to meet the requirement for secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers in Section 1503.4 for roofs that provide for positive roof drainage. For the purposes of this exception, existing secondary drainage or scupper systems required in accordance with this code shall not be removed unless they are replaced by secondary drains or scuppers designed and installed in accordance with Section 1503.4.

1511.2 Structural and construction loads. Structural roof components shall be capable of supporting the roof-covering system and the material and equipment loads that will be encountered during installation of the system.

1511.3 Roof replacement. Roof replacement shall include the removal of all existing layers of roof coverings down to the roof deck.

Exception: Where the existing roof assembly includes an ice barrier membrane that is adhered to the roof deck, the existing ice barrier membrane shall be permitted to remain in place and covered with an additional layer of ice barrier membrane in accordance with Section 1507.

1511.3.1 Roof recover. The installation of a new roof covering over an existing roof covering shall be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the new roof covering is installed in accordance with the roof covering manufacturer's approved instructions.
2. Complete and separate roofing systems, such as standing-seam metal roof panel systems, that are designed to transmit the roof loads directly to the building's structural system and that do not rely on existing roofs and roof coverings for support, shall not require the removal of existing roof coverings.
3. Metal panel, metal shingle and concrete and clay tile roof coverings shall be permitted to be installed over existing wood shake roofs when applied in accordance with Section 1511.4.
4. The application of a new protective coating over an existing spray polyurethane foam roofing system shall be permitted without tear off of existing roof coverings.

1511.3.1.1 Exceptions. A roof recover shall not be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the existing roof or roof covering is water soaked or has deteriorated to the point that the existing roof or roof covering is not adequate as a base for additional roofing.
2. Where the existing roof covering is slate, clay, cement or asbestos-cement tile.
3. Where the existing roof has two or more applications of any type of roof covering.

1511.4 Roof recovering. Where the application of a new roof covering over wood shingle or shake roofs creates a combustible concealed space, the entire existing surface shall be covered with gypsum board, mineral fiber, glass fiber or other approved materials securely fastened in place.

1511.5 Reinstallation of materials. Existing slate, clay or cement tile shall be permitted for reinstallation, except that damaged, cracked or broken slate or tile shall not be reinstalled. Existing vent flashing, metal edgings, drain outlets, collars and metal counterflashings shall not be reinstalled where rusted, damaged or deteriorated. Aggregate surfacing materials shall not be reinstalled.

1511.6 Flashings. Flashings shall be reconstructed in accordance with approved manufacturer's installation instructions. Metal flashing to which bituminous materials are to be adhered shall be primed prior to installation.

HISTORY NOTE APPENDIX

California Building Code Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations (CCR)

HISTORY:

For prior code history, see the History Note Appendix to the *California Building Code* 2013 Triennial Edition, effective January 1, 2014.

1. (BSC 05/15, SFM 06/15, DSA-AC 01/15, DSA-SS 02/15, HCD 03/15, OSHPD 02/15 & 04/15, SLC 01/15) - Adopt the 2015 edition of the *International Building Code* published by the International Code Council, for incorporation into the 2016 *California Building Code*, CCR Title 24, Part 2 with amendments for State regulated occupancies, effective on January 1, 2017.
2. Rulemaking file numbers BSC EF 01-17, HCD EF 01-17: Emergency regulations amend Sections 107.2.7, 110.3.8.1, Table 1607.1, 2304.12.2.5, and 2304.12.2.6. Approved as an emergency on January 27, 2017, effective upon filing with Secretary of State on January 30, 2017.
3. Rulemaking file number DSA-SS/CC EF 01-17: Emergency regulations amend Sections 1.9.2.1, 1.9.2.2, 107.2.7, 110.3.8.1, 1616.5.1.2 – 1616.5.1.5, Table 1607A.1, 2304.12.2.5, and 2304.12.2.6 approved as an emergency on January 27, 2017, effective upon filing with Secretary of State on January 30, 2017.
4. Errata to correct editorial errors throughout the code. Effective September 1, 2017.



GET UP TO CODE FAST IN CALIFORNIA

with ICC Significant Changes guides

SIGNIFICANT CHANGES TO THE CALIFORNIA CODES, 2016 EDITIONS

In the fast-paced world of construction, it is critical to have a solid understanding of the latest updates to the California Codes. This series of full-color, illustrated guides will help you gain a clear knowledge of the code itself, what areas have been updated, how they have been revised, and the rationale behind those changes.

Each easy-to-use resource focuses on provisions that have special significance, are utilized frequently, or have had a change in application between the 2013 and 2016 editions. Each change is accompanied by a photograph, real-world application example, table or illustration to assist and enhance readers' understanding. With a summary and discussion of the impact of these changes, each guide's coverage is complete, making it the perfect tool for transitioning from the 2013 to 2016 editions.

FEATURES:

- a full-color photograph, table or example illustrates each change
- detailed table of contents, part summaries and change summaries
- clear notation of deleted code language and new code text
- logical organization that follows the layout of the code

SIGNIFICANT CHANGES TO THE CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE, 2016

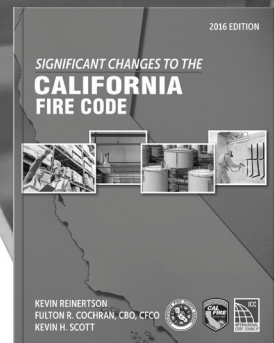
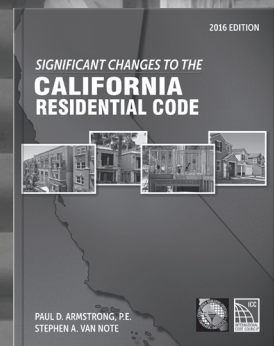
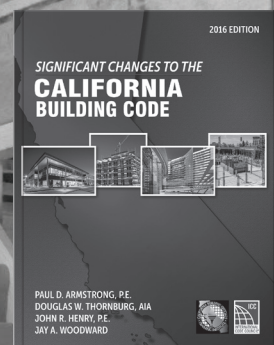
SOFT COVER #5521S16 | PDF DOWNLOAD #8950P733

SIGNIFICANT CHANGES TO THE CALIFORNIA RESIDENTIAL CODE, 2016

SOFT COVER #5526S16 | PDF DOWNLOAD #8950P734

SIGNIFICANT CHANGES TO THE CALIFORNIA FIRE CODE, 2016

SOFT COVER #5592S16 | PDF DOWNLOAD #8950P735



Order your Significant Changes guides today!
1-800-786-4452 | www.iccsafe.org/books



CaIDAG™ 2017

California Disabled Accessibility Guidebook

Understanding the latest California accessibility provisions is made easier with this newly updated bestseller. CaIDAG is the only book combining and cross-referencing the 2016 *California Building Code* (CBC) regulations with federal 2010 ADA/ADAS requirements!

This comprehensive, detailed and user-friendly resource features:

- More than 250 superb illustrations
- Valuable flowcharts breaking down compliance procedures
- Applicable CBC and ADA/ADAS section numbers for easy reference
- Easy-to-follow checklist format perfect for survey, inspection, or design
- Selected California statutes regarding disabled accessibility compliance

This is a valuable reference for contractors, architects, inspectors, attorneys, and anyone working with the accessibility provisions of the CBC and ADA/ADAS. (566 pages)

SOFT COVER #9080S17 | PDF DOWNLOAD #8950P805

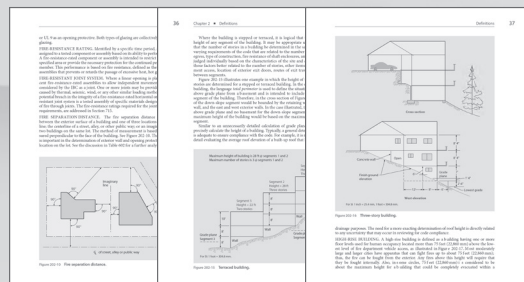
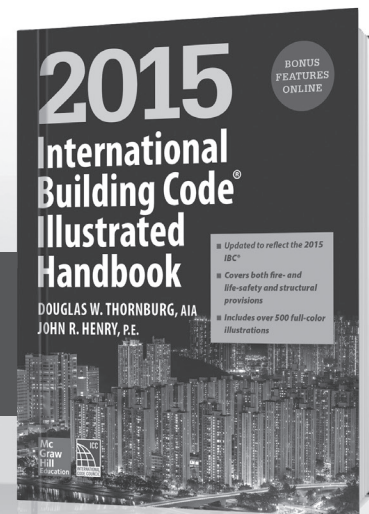


500+ COLOR ILLUSTRATIONS!

2015 International Building Code® Illustrated Handbook

An easy-to-use visual guide to the 2015 IBC®

- ✓ Bonus features online
- ✓ Expanded topics
- ✓ 500+ color illustrations
- ✓ New 7.5" x 9.5" format



Thoroughly revised to reflect the 2015 IBC, this full-color guide makes it easy to understand and apply complex IBC provisions and achieve compliance. With an emphasis on structural and fire- and life-safety requirements by code experts **Douglas W. Thornburg, AIA**, and **John R. Henry, P.E.**, this practical resource has been designed to save time and money. The Handbook provides all the information you need to get construction jobs done right, on time, and up to the requirements of the 2015 IBC. Access to a suite of online bonus features is included. (992 pages)

HARD COVER #4000S15 | PDF DOWNLOAD #8950P685

Get your Illustrated Guides today! 1-800-786-4452 | www.iccsafe.org/books